South Africa - Community Survey 2007 - IPUMS Subset

Statistics South Africa, Minnesota Population Center - University of Minnesota

Report generated on: January 26, 2017

Visit our data catalog at:

Sampling

Sampling Procedure

MICRODATA SOURCE: Statistics South Africa

SAMPLE DESIGN: Two-stage, stratified systematic random sampling drawn by the country. Stage I: The sampling frame contains 79,466 enumeration areas (EAs) (the primary sampling units) which are stratified by municipality. Systematic random sampling is used to select EAs within municipalities. In municipalities with fewer than 30 EAs, all EAs are automatically selected. In municipalities with 30+ EAs, a fix proportion of 19% of EAs are selected. If the selected EAs in a municipality are less than 30, the sample in the municipality is increased to 30 EAs. Stage 2: A fixed proportion of 10% of the dwellings in a selected EA are selected. If there are less than 10 dwellings in an EA, the selection is increased to 10 dwelling units. All households within the selected dwelling units are covered. No replacement of refusals, vacant dwellings or non-contacts. Response rate 93.9%.

SAMPLE UNIT: Enumeration area, dwelling

SAMPLE FRACTION: 2%

SAMPLE SIZE (person records): 1,047,657

Response Rate

COVERAGE: Private dwellings and private seasonal dwellings/holiday homes; workers' hostels and convent/monastery/religious retreats, but not other collective living quarters, UNDERCOUNT: Collective living quarters (institutions) and some households in enumeration areas classified as recreational areas or institutions

Weighting

Computed by census agency and should be used for most types of analysis.

Questionnaires

Overview

A single "Household Questionnaire" for information on dwelling, household, and individuals.

Data Collection

Data Collection Dates

Start	End	Cycle
2007-02-07	2007-03-07	N/A

Data Collection Mode

Face-to-face [f2f]

DATA COLLECTION NOTES

De facto and de jure, CENSUS DAY: February 7, 2007, FIELD WORK PERIOD: A three week period (February 7-28, 2007) with a non-response follow-up period of one week (March 1-7).

SUPERVISION

Direct interview

Data Processing

No content available

Data Appraisal

No content available

File Description

Variable List

ZAF2007-H-H

Content	Household record
Cases	0
Variable(s)	107
Structure	Type: relational Keys: SERIAL(Household serial number)
Version	Version 6.4, IPUMS sample
Producer	Minnesota Population Center
Missing Data	

Variables

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V1	RECTYPE	Record type	discrete	character	
V2	YEAR	Year	discrete	numeric	
V3	SAMPLE	IPUMS sample identifier	discrete	numeric	
V4	SERIAL	Household serial number	contin	numeric	
V5	PERSONS	Number of person records in the household	contin	numeric	
V6	SUBSAMP	Subsample number	discrete	numeric	
V7	GQ	Group quarters (collective dwelling) status	discrete	numeric	
V8	UNREL	Number of unrelated persons	discrete	numeric	
V9	URBAN	Urban-rural status	discrete	numeric	
V10	REGIONW	Continent and region of country	discrete	numeric	
V11	MUNIZA	South Africa, Municipality	discrete	numeric	
V12	WATSUP	Water supply	discrete	numeric	
V13	PHONE	Telephone availability	discrete	numeric	
V14	CELL	Cellular phone availability	discrete	numeric	
V15	TRASH	Trash disposal	discrete	numeric	
V16	REFRIG	Refrigerator	discrete	numeric	
V17	TV	Television set	discrete	numeric	
V18	RADIO	Radio in household	discrete	numeric	
V19	ROOMS	Number of rooms	discrete	numeric	
V20	TOILET	Toilet	discrete	numeric	
V21	MORTNUM	Number of deaths in household last year	discrete	numeric	
V22	ANYMORT	Any deaths in household last year	discrete	numeric	
V23	HHTYPE	Household classification	discrete	numeric	
V24	NFAMS	Number of families in household	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V25	HEADLOC	Head's location in household	contin	numeric	
V26	GEOLEV1	1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	discrete	numeric	
V27	ZA2007A_0001	Dwelling number	contin	numeric	Dwelling number
V28	ZA2007A_0022	Urban	discrete	numeric	Particulars of the household Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _ Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____ Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Total number of persons in the household _ _ Number of males _ _ Number of females _ _ Number of questionnaires for this household _
V29	ZA2007A_0024	Enumeration area type	discrete	numeric	Enumeration area type
V30	ZA2007A_0026	Household number	discrete	numeric	Household number
V31	ZA2007A_0028	Type of dwelling	discrete	numeric	H-01 Type of main dwelling Which of the following types best describes the main dwelling unit that this household occupies? If this household lives in More than one dwelling, write the code of the main dwelling that the household occupies in the box. Read out: [] 01 House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard [] 02 Traditional dwelling/ hut /structure made of traditional material [] 03 Flat in block of flats [] 04 Town/ cluster/ semi-detached house (simplex, duplex, triplex) [] 05 House/flat/room in backyard [] 06 Informal dwelling/ shack in backyard [] 07 Informal dwelling/ shack not in backyard e.g. in informal/ squatter settlement [] 08 Room/ flatlet not in backyard but on a shared property [] 09 Caravan or tent [] 10 Private ship/boat [] 11 Workers' hostel (bed/room) [] 12 Other (specify) _____ _ _
V32	ZA2007A_0029	Number of rooms	discrete	numeric	H-02 Rooms How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household? Count all rooms in all dwellings. Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc. unless persons are living in them. _ _
V33	ZA2007A_0030	Access to water	discrete	numeric	H-03 Access to water In which way does this household obtain water for domestic use? [] 1 Piped water inside the dwelling [] 2 Piped water inside the yard [] 3 Piped water from access point outside the yard [] 4 Borehole [] 5 Spring [] 6 Dam/pool [] 7 River/stream [] 8 Water vendor [] 9 Rain water tank [] 0 Other Write only one code in the box. _
V34	ZA2007A_0031	Municipal water service provider	discrete	numeric	H-04 Service provider Does the household get water from the Municipality (Regional/ Local water scheme)? Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V35	ZA2007A_0032	Distance from water access point	discrete	numeric	H-05 Distance from water access point What is the distance from water access point? [] 1 Less than 200m [] 2 Between 200m and 500m [] 3 Between 500m and 1km [] 4 More than 1km Write only one code in the box. _
V36	ZA2007A_0033	Toilet facility	discrete	numeric	H-06 Toilet facilities What is the main type of toilet facility available for use by this household? Read out: [] 1 Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system) [] 2 Flush toilet (with septic tank) [] 3 Dry toilet facility [] 4 Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP) [] 5 Pit toilet without ventilation [] 6 Chemical toilet [] 7 Bucket toilet system [] 8 None Write only one code in the box. _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V37	ZA2007A_0034	Energy or fuel for cooking	discrete	numeric	H-07 Energy/fuel for cooking What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking? [] 1 Electricity [] 2 Gas [] 3 Paraffin [] 4 Wood [] 5 Coal [] 7 Animal dung [] 8 Solar [] 9 Other (specify) _____ Write only one code in the box. _
V38	ZA2007A_0035	Energy or fuel for heating	discrete	numeric	H-08 Energy / fuel for heating What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for heating? [] 1 Electricity [] 2 Gas [] 3 Paraffin [] 4 Wood [] 5 Coal [] 7 Animal dung [] 8 Solar [] 9 Other (specify) _____ Write only one code in the box. _
V39	ZA2007A_0036	Energy or fuel for lighting	discrete	numeric	H-09 Energy / fuel for lighting What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for lighting? [] 1 Electricity [] 2 Gas [] 3 Paraffin [] 6 Candles [] 8 Solar [] 9 Other (specify) _____ Write only one code in the box. _
V40	ZA2007A_0037	Refrigerator	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Refrigerator [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V41	ZA2007A_0038	Radio	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Radio [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V42	ZA2007A_0039	Television	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Television [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V43	ZA2007A_0040	Computer	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Computer [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V44	ZA2007A_0041	Landline telephone facilities	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Landline telephone [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V45	ZA2007A_0042	Internet facilities	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Internet facilities at home [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V46	ZA2007A_0043	Post facilities (mail postbox)	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Post facilities (Mail postbox) [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V47	ZA2007A_0044	Cell phone	discrete	numeric	H-10 Household goods Does the household have any of the following? Mark appropriate box with an X Cellphone [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V48	ZA2007A_0045	Tenure status	discrete	numeric	H-11 Tenure status What is the tenure status of this household? If the household uses several dwellings, write the code for the main dwelling in the box. Read out: [] 1 Owned and fully paid off [] 2 Owned but not yet paid off [] 3 Rented [] 4 Occupied rent-free [] 5 Other (specify) ____ Write only one code in the box. _
V49	ZA2007A_0046	Refuse or rubbish	discrete	numeric	H-12 Refuse disposal How is the refuse or rubbish from this household mainly disposed of? Read out: 1 Removed by local authority/ private company at least once a week 2 Removed by local authority/ private company less often 3 Communal refuse dump 4 Own refuse dump 5 No rubbish disposal 6 Other (specify) ____ Write only one code in the box. _
V50	ZA2007A_0047	Flag for DWTYPE	discrete	numeric	Flag for DWTYPE
V51	ZA2007A_0048	Flag for ROOMS	discrete	numeric	Flag for ROOMS
V52	ZA2007A_0049	Flag for WATSRC	discrete	numeric	Flag for WATSRC
V53	ZA2007A_0050	Flag for WATSERV	discrete	numeric	Flag for WATSERV
V54	ZA2007A_0051	Flag for WATDIST	discrete	numeric	Flag for WATDIST
V55	ZA2007A_0052	Flag for TOILET	discrete	numeric	Flag for TOILET

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V56	ZA2007A_0053	Flag for COOKENER	discrete	numeric	Flag for COOKENER
V57	ZA2007A_0054	Flag for HEATENER	discrete	numeric	Flag for HEATENER
V58	ZA2007A_0055	Flag for LIGHTENR	discrete	numeric	Flag for LIGHTENR
V59	ZA2007A_0056	Flag for REFRIG	discrete	numeric	Flag for REFRIG
V60	ZA2007A_0057	Flag for RADIO	discrete	numeric	Flag for RADIO
V61	ZA2007A_0058	Flag for TV	discrete	numeric	Flag for TV
V62	ZA2007A_0059	Flag for COMPUTER	discrete	numeric	Flag for COMPUTER
V63	ZA2007A_0060	Flag for PHONE	discrete	numeric	Flag for PHONE
V64	ZA2007A_0061	Flag for INTERNET	discrete	numeric	Flag for INTERNET
V65	ZA2007A_0062	Flag for POSTAL	discrete	numeric	Flag for POSTAL
V66	ZA2007A_0063	Flag for CELLPHON	discrete	numeric	Flag for CELLPHON
V67	ZA2007A_0064	Flag for TENURE	discrete	numeric	Flag for TENURE
V68	ZA2007A_0065	Flag for REFUSE	discrete	numeric	Flag for REFUSE
V69	ZA2007A_0066	Design weights	contin	numeric	Design weights
V70	ZA2007A_0067	Average adjusted weights	contin	numeric	Average adjusted weights
V71	ZA2007A_0068	Derived race/ethnicity of head of household	discrete	numeric	Derived race/ethnicity of head of household
V72	ZA2007A_0069	Derived sex of head of household	discrete	numeric	Derived sex of head of household
V73	ZA2007A_0070	Derived majority race/ethnicity	discrete	numeric	Derived majority race/ethnicity
V74	ZA2007A_0071	Household size	discrete	numeric	Household size
V75	ZA2007A_0072	Annual household income	contin	numeric	Annual household income
V76	ZA2007A_0073	Community survey less unoccupied weights	contin	numeric	Community survey less unoccupied weights
V77	ZA2007A_0074	Community survey adjusted all non-response weights	contin	numeric	Community survey adjusted all non-response weights
V78	ZA2007A_0075	Community survey final provincial weights	contin	numeric	Community survey final provincial weights
V79	ZA2007A_0076	Community survey scope status	discrete	numeric	Community survey scope status
V80	ZA2007A_0077	Community Survey final municipal weights	contin	numeric	Community Survey final municipal weights
V81	ZA2007A_0099	Number of mortality records	discrete	numeric	Number of mortality records
V82	ZA2007A_0102	Number of males	discrete	numeric	Particulars of the household Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _ Physical identification of the dwelling unit _ _ _ _ _ _ Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Total number of persons in the household _ _ Number of males _ _ Number of females _ _ Number of questionnaires for this household _
V83	ZA2007A_0103	Number of females	discrete	numeric	Particulars of the household Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _ Physical identification of the dwelling unit _ _ _ _ _ _ Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Total number of persons in the household _ _ Number of males _ _ Number of females _ _ Number of questionnaires for this household _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V84	ZA2007A_0104	Number of questionnaires for this household	discrete	numeric	Particulars of the household Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _ Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____ Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ Total number of persons in the household _ _ Number of males _ _ Number of females _ _ Number of questionnaires for this household _
V85	ZA2007A_0105	Total number of households at the selected dwelling	discrete	numeric	Households at the selected dwelling Household number of this household _ _ Total number of households at the selected dwelling _ _ Was this questionnaire subjected to quality control (or checks) by any Community Survey personnel other than the supervisor? Mark the appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V86	ZA2007A_0106	Questionnaire quality control (by CS personnel)	discrete	numeric	Households at the selected dwelling Household number of this household _ _ Total number of households at the selected dwelling _ _ Was this questionnaire subjected to quality control (or checks) by any Community Survey personnel other than the supervisor? Mark the appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V87	ZA2007A_0113	Any deaths	discrete	numeric	Section I: Mortality in the last 12 months - (between February 2006 and March 2007) Read out: I am now going to ask for information on any member of the household who has passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007. M-00 Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007? Mark appropriate box with an X If no, the questionnaire is completed. Thank the respondent(s). [] Yes [] No
V88	ZA2007A_0114	Number of deaths	discrete	numeric	Section I: Mortality in the last 12 months - (between February 2006 and March 2007) M-00 Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007? Mark appropriate box with an X If no, the questionnaire is completed. Thank the respondent(s). [] Yes [] No M-01 How many members passed away? _ _
V89	ZA2007A_0115	Strata	contin	numeric	Strata
V90	HHWT	Household weight	contin	numeric	
V91	GEOLEV2	2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	discrete	numeric	
V92	GEO1_ZA	South Africa, Province 2001 - 2011 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V93	GEO1_ZA2007	South Africa, Province 2007 [Level 1, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V94	GEO2_ZA	South Africa, District council 2001 - 2011 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V95	GEO2_ZA2007	South Africa, District council 2007 [Level 2, GIS]	discrete	numeric	
V96	NCOUPLES	Number of married couples in household	discrete	numeric	
V97	NMOTHERS	Number of mothers in household	discrete	numeric	
V98	NFATHERS	Number of fathers in household	discrete	numeric	
V99	COUNTRY	Country	discrete	numeric	
V100	ELECTRIC	Electricity	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V101	OWNERSHIP	Ownership of dwelling [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V102	OWNERSHIPD	Ownership of dwelling [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V103	FUELCOOK	Cooking fuel	discrete	numeric	
V104	FUELHEAT	Fuel for heating	discrete	numeric	
V105	INTERNET	Internet access	discrete	numeric	
V106	COMPUTER	Computer	discrete	numeric	
V107	STRATA	Strata identifier	contin	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V101	OWNERSHIP	Ownership of dwelling [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V102	OWNERSHIPD	Ownership of dwelling [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	

ZAF2007-P-H

Content	Person records
Cases	0
Variable(s)	252
Structure	Type: relational Keys: PERNUM(Person number), SERIAL(Household serial number [person version])
Version	Version 6.4, IPUMS sample
Producer	Minnesota Population Center
Missing Data	

Variables

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V108	PERNUM	Person number	contin	numeric	
V109	MOMLOC	Mother's location in household	contin	numeric	
V110	POPLOC	Father's location in household	contin	numeric	
V111	SPLOC	Spouse's location in household	contin	numeric	
V112	PARRULE	Rule for linking parent	discrete	numeric	
V113	SPRULE	Rule for linking spouse	discrete	numeric	
V114	STEPMOM	Probable stepmother	discrete	numeric	
V115	STEPPOP	Probable stepfather	discrete	numeric	
V116	POLYMAL	Man with more than one wife linked	discrete	numeric	
V117	POLY2ND	Woman is second or higher order wife	discrete	numeric	
V118	FAMUNIT	Family unit membership	contin	numeric	
V119	FAMSIZE	Number of own family members in household	discrete	numeric	
V120	NCHILD	Number of own children in household	discrete	numeric	
V121	NCHLT5	Number of own children under age 5 in household	discrete	numeric	
V122	ELDCH	Age of eldest own child in household	discrete	numeric	
V123	YNGCH	Age of youngest own child in household	discrete	numeric	
V124	RELATE	Relationship to household head [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V125	RELATED	Relationship to household head [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V126	AGE	Age	discrete	numeric	
V127	AGE2	Age, grouped into intervals	discrete	numeric	
V128	SEX	Sex	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V129	MARST	Marital status [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V130	MARSTD	Marital status [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V131	CONSENS	Consensual union	discrete	numeric	
V132	POLYGAM	Polygamous union	discrete	numeric	
V133	CHBORN	Children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V134	CHSURV	Children surviving	discrete	numeric	
V135	CHBORNF	Number of female children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V136	CHBORNM	Number of male children ever born	discrete	numeric	
V137	CHDEAD	Number of children dead	discrete	numeric	
V138	MORTMOT	Mortality status of mother	discrete	numeric	
V139	MORTFAT	Mortality status of father	discrete	numeric	
V140	HOMEFEM	Number of own female children in household	discrete	numeric	
V141	AWAYFEM	Number of own female children living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	
V142	BPLZA	Province of birth, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V143	RACE	Race or color	discrete	numeric	
V144	SCHOOL	School attendance	discrete	numeric	
V145	EDUCZA	Educational attainment, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V146	EMPSTAT	Activity status (employment status) [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V147	EMPSTATD	Activity status (employment status) [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V148	OCCISCO	Occupation, ISCO general	discrete	numeric	
V149	OCC	Occupation, unrecoded	contin	numeric	
V150	INDGEN	Industry, general recode	discrete	numeric	
V151	IND	Industry, unrecoded	contin	numeric	
V152	CLASSWK	Status in employment (class of worker) [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V153	CLASSWKD	Status in employment (class of worker) [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V154	INCTOT	Total income	contin	numeric	
V155	MIGZA1	Province of previous residence, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V156	DISEMP	Employment disability	discrete	numeric	
V157	DISBLND	Blind or vision-impaired	discrete	numeric	
V158	DISDEAF	Deaf or hearing-impaired	discrete	numeric	
V159	DISMUTE	Mute or speech impaired	discrete	numeric	

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V160	DISMNTL	Mental disability	discrete	numeric	
V161	DISPSYC	Psychological disability	discrete	numeric	
V162	BIRTHYR	Year of birth	discrete	numeric	
V163	RESIDENT	Residence status: de facto, de jure	discrete	numeric	
V164	ISCO88A	Occupation, ISCO-1988, 3-digit	discrete	numeric	
V165	ZA2007A_0003	Person number (within household)	discrete	numeric	Person number (within household)
V166	ZA2007A_0006	Number of persons in household	discrete	numeric	Number of persons in household
V167	ZA2007A_0400	Person number	discrete	numeric	P-01 Person number _ _ F-01 First name and surname Write down the name and surname of each member in the appropriate column. Start with the usual members (starting with the head) who were present last night, followed by those members who were absent last night, and lastly by those who stayed in the household last night as visitors. Always start with the head or acting head of household i.e. person no. 01. The head or acting head is the person who is the main decision-maker in the household. If two or more people are equal decision-makers, take the oldest person first. Write sideways. _____ F-02 Age Do not ask the question. Write the age in block provided based on answer from P-03 _ _ _ F-03 Sex Do not ask the question. Mark the appropriate box with an X based on answer from P-04 [] 1 Male [] 2 Female F-04 Respondent For each person in the household, indicate the number of the person who provided or responded to most questions applicable to that person. Enter person no. in the box. _ _
V168	ZA2007A_0403	Month of birth	discrete	numeric	P-02 Date of birth What is (the person)'s date of birth? Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY DD is for day; MM is for month and YYYY is for year. For any information that is not known, leave the box blank. [Example omitted] Day of birth: _ _ Month of birth: _ _ Year of birth: _ _ _ _
V169	ZA2007A_0404	Year of birth	discrete	numeric	P-02 Date of birth What is (the person)'s date of birth? Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY DD is for day; MM is for month and YYYY is for year. For any information that is not known, leave the box blank. [Example omitted] Day of birth: _ _ Month of birth: _ _ Year of birth: _ _ _ _
V170	ZA2007A_0405	Age	discrete	numeric	P-03 Age What is (the person)'s age in completed years? If age not known ask for an estimate of age. If no one is able to estimate, write 998. For babies less than 1 year write 000 for age. For a person 7 years and 10 months write 007 for age. Age (in years): _ _ _ _ Transcribe the answer to F-02 on the flap
V171	ZA2007A_0406	Sex	discrete	numeric	P-04 Sex Is (the person) male or female? Mark the appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Male [] 2 Female Transcribe the answer to F-03 on the flap.
V172	ZA2007A_0407	Usually stay in this house four nights a week	discrete	numeric	P-05 Usually stay Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week and has done so over the last four weeks? Mark the appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V173	ZA2007A_0408	Stayed in this house last night	discrete	numeric	P-06 Last night stay Did (the person) stay in this household last night? Mark the appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V174	ZA2007A_0409	Relationship	discrete	numeric	P-07 Relationship What is (the person)'s relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in column 1 of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household. [] 01 Head/acting head [] 02 Husband/wife/partner [] 03 Son/daughter [] 04 Adopted son/daughter [] 05 Stepchild [] 06 Brother/sister [] 07 Parent (mother/father) [] 08 Parent-in-law [] 09 Grand/great grandchild [] 10 Son/daughter-in-law [] 11 Brother/sister-in-law [] 12 Grandmother/father [] 13 Other relative [] 14 Non-related person _ _
V175	ZA2007A_0410	Marital status	discrete	numeric	P-08 Marital status What is (the person)'s present marital status? Write only one code per person. If both civil/religious and traditional indicate civil/religious. [] 1 Married civil/religious [] 2 Married traditional/customary [] 3 Polygamous marriage [] 4 Living together as married partners [] 5 Never married [] 6 Widower/widow [] 7 Separated [] 8 Divorced If 5 to 8, Go to P-10 _
V176	ZA2007A_0411	Spouse person number	discrete	numeric	P-09 Spouse Who, in this household, is (the person)'s spouse or partner? [Question P-09 was asked of persons who are currently married, per question P-08.] Write the person no. of the spouse or partner in the appropriate box. If the spouse does not reside in the household, write 98. _ _
V177	ZA2007A_0412	Race/ethnicity	discrete	numeric	P-10 Population group How would (the person) describe himself/herself in terms of population group? Write code in the box. [] 1 Black [] 2 Coloured [] 3 Indian or Asian [] 4 White _
V178	ZA2007A_0413	Province of birth	discrete	numeric	P-11 Province of birth In which province in South Africa was (the person) born? Write code in the box. If the person was not born in South Africa, the code is 10. [] 01 Western Cape [] 02 Eastern Cape [] 03 Northern Cape [] 04 Free State [] 05 KwaZulu-Natal [] 06 North West [] 07 Gauteng [] 08 Mpumalanga [] 09 Limpopo [] 10 Outside RSA [] 11 Do not know _ _
V179	ZA2007A_0418	Person lived in this dwelling in October 2001	discrete	numeric	P-16 Five years ago Was (the person) living in this dwelling in October 2001? Mark appropriate box with an X. If 1 "Yes" or 3 "Born after October 2001", Go to P-21. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Born after October 2001
V180	ZA2007A_0419	Month the person moved to this place	discrete	numeric	P-17 Period of movement In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling? [Question P-17 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16]. [Example omitted] Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V181	ZA2007A_0420	Year the person moved to this place	discrete	numeric	P-17 Period of movement In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling? [Question P-17 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16]. [Example omitted] Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V182	ZA2007A_0421	Province of previous residence	discrete	numeric	P-18 Province of previous residence In which province did (the person) live before moving to this dwelling? [Question P-18 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16]. Write code in the box. If the person moved from outside South Africa, write code 10. [] 01 Western Cape [] 02 Eastern Cape [] 03 Northern Cape [] 04 Free State [] 05 KwaZulu-Natal [] 06 North West [] 07 Gauteng [] 08 Mpumalanga [] 09 Limpopo [] 10 Outside RSA [] 11 Do not know _ _
V183	ZA2007A_0424	Any disability	discrete	numeric	P-21 Disability Does (the person) have any kind of disability? Mark appropriate box with an X If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-24. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V184	ZA2007A_0425	Disability: sight	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V185	ZA2007A_0426	Disability: hearing	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V186	ZA2007A_0427	Disability: communication	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V187	ZA2007A_0428	Disability: physical	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V188	ZA2007A_0429	Disability: intellectual	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V189	ZA2007A_0430	Disability: emotional	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V190	ZA2007A_0431	Disability prevents from life activities	discrete	numeric	P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological) P-23 Disability intensity Does the disability seriously prevent (the person) from full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life, etc.)? [Question P-23 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V191	ZA2007A_0432	Receive government/welfare grant	discrete	numeric	P-24 Social grant Does (the person) receive any social / government grant? Mark appropriate box with an X If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-26. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V192	ZA2007A_0433	Social grant - old age pension	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V193	ZA2007A_0434	Social grant - disability grant	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V194	ZA2007A_0435	Social grant - child support grant	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V195	ZA2007A_0436	Social grant - care dependency grant	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V196	ZA2007A_0437	Social grant - foster care grant	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V197	ZA2007A_0438	Social grant - grant in aid	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V198	ZA2007A_0439	Social grant - social relief	discrete	numeric	P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V199	ZA2007A_0440	School Attendance	discrete	numeric	P-26 School attendance Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution? Read out: Attendance includes all part-time and full-time studies, whether in person or as a distance learner, as well as home schooling. Mark appropriate box with an X. If 2 "No" Go to P-29. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V200	ZA2007A_0441	Educational institution	discrete	numeric	P-27 Educational institution Which of the following educational institutions does (the person) attend? [Question P-27 was asked of persons who presently attend an educational institution, per question P-26.] Write code in the box. Read out: [] 1 Pre-school [] 2 Primary school [] 3 Secondary school [] 4 College [] 5 University/university of technology/Technikon [] 6 Adult Basic Education and Training [] 7 Other _
V201	ZA2007A_0442	Private/public school	discrete	numeric	P-28 Public or independent institution Is the institution (the person) attends public (government) or independent (private)? [Question P-28 was asked of persons who presently attend an educational institution, per question P-26.] Write code in the box. [] 1 Public [] 2 Independent [] 3 Do not know _
V202	ZA2007A_0443	Highest level of education	discrete	numeric	P-29 Level of education What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed? For a person with grade 12, probe whether he/she has a university exemption or not. For a person with a certificate or a diploma, probe whether he/she has grade 12 (std 10) or not. Write code in the box. [] 00 Grade 0 [] 01 Grade 1 [] 02 Grade 2 [] 03 Grade 3/ Std 1/ ABET 1 [] 04 Grade 4/ Std 2 [] 05 Grade 5/ Std 3/ ABET 2 [] 06 Grade 6/ Std 4 [] 07 Grade 7/ Std 5/ ABET 3 [] 08 Grade 8/ Std 6 [] 09 Grade 9/ Std 7/ ABET 4 [] 10 Grade 10/Std 8/ NTCI [] 11 Grade 11/ Std 9/ NTCII [] 12 Attended Grade 12, but not completed Grade 12 [] 13 Grade 12 / Std 10/ NTCIII (without university exemption) [] 14 Grade 12/ Std 10 (with university exemption) [] 15 Certificate with [less than] Std 10/Gr.12 [] 16 Diploma with [less than] Std 10/Gr.12 [] 17 Certificate with Std 10/Gr.12 [] 18 Diploma with Std 10 /Gr.12 [] 19 Bachelors degree [] 20 BTech [] 21 Post graduate diploma [] 22 Honours degree [] 23 Higher degree (Masters/PhD) [] 24 No schooling [] 98 Out of scope (children under five years of age) _ _
V203	ZA2007A_0444	Run or do any kind of business, big or small	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30a In the last 7 days, did (the person) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for himself/herself or with one or more partners even for only one hour? Examples: Selling things, making things for sale, repairing things, guarding cars, brewing beer, hairdressing, creche business, taxi or other transport business, having a legal or medical practice, etc. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V204	ZA2007A_0445	Worked for a wage, salary, commission or payment in-kind	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30b In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work for a wage, salary, commission or payment in kind (excluding domestic worker) even for only one hour? Examples: a regular job, contract, casual or piece work for pay, work in exchange for food or housing. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V205	ZA2007A_0446	Worked as domestic worker for a wage, salary, or payment in-kind	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30c In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work as a domestic worker for a wage, salary or payment in kind even for only one hour? [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V206	ZA2007A_0447	Helped without pay in a household business	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30d In the last 7 days, did (the person) help unpaid in a household business of any kind even for only one hour? Examples: Help to sell things, make things for sale or exchange, doing the accounts, cleaning up for the business, etc. Do not count normal housework [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V207	ZA2007A_0448	Worked on household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30e In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work on his/her own or the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or help in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household even for only one hour? Examples: Ploughing, harvesting, looking after livestock. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V208	ZA2007A_0449	Helped with construction/repair of own home, plot, cattle post or business	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30f In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business even for only one hour? [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V209	ZA2007A_0450	Caught fish, wild animals or other food for sale or household consumption	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-30g In the last 7 days, did (the person) catch any fish, prawns, shell fish, wild animals either as food for sale or for household use, even for only one hour? If 1 "Yes" to any of P-30a to P-30g, Go to P-36. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V210	ZA2007A_0451	Have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity to return to	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-31 Temporary absence from work Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to? [Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence. If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V211	ZA2007A_0452	Reason not working	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-32 Reasons for not working Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days? [Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future [] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work [] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work [] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work [] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped) [] 06 Too young or too old to work [] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer [] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs [] 09 Cannot find work [] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory) [] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract [] 12 Retrenched [] 13 Other reason Write code in the box. _ _
V212	ZA2007A_0453	Availability for work	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-33 Availability for work If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work? [Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 1 Within a week [] 2 Within two weeks [] 3 Within four weeks [] 4 More than four weeks from now [] 5 Not interested [] 6 Not able (health or disability) [] 7 Do not know Write code in the box. _
V213	ZA2007A_0454	Looked for work	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-34 Active steps seeking work During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work? [Question P-34 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V214	ZA2007A_0455	Start any kind of business	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-35 Active steps seeking work During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business? [Question P-35 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] If P-34 and P-35 completed Go to P-40 Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V215	ZA2007A_0456	Work status	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-36 Work status How can one describe (the person)'s main activity or work status best? If yes to any of P-30a to P-30g or P-31 [who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to.] Write code in the box. Read out : [] 1 Paid employee [] 2 Paid family worker [] 3 Self-employed [] 4 Employer [] 5 Unpaid family worker _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V216	ZA2007A_0457	Work sector	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-37 Business type Is the organisation/ company / business /enterprise/branch where (the person) works in the formal or informal sector? [Question P-37 was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.] Formal sector employment is where the employer (institution, business) is registered (i.e. has a tax number) and informal is when it is not registered. Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 In the formal sector [] 2 In the informal sector (including domestic work) [] 3 Do not know
V217	ZA2007A_0588	Occupation, 3 digits	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-38 Occupation What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace? [Question P-38 was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.] For example: street vendor, primary school teacher, domestic worker etc. Write in capital letters. _____
V218	ZA2007A_0589	Industry, 3 digit	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-39 Industry P-39a What is the name of (the person)'s place of work or company. [Question P-39a was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.] _____ P-39b What is the main business/function of the company that (the person) works (main economic activity) for? [Question P-39b was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.] For example: gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking, or subsistence farming if self-employed. Write the main industry, main economic activity, product, goods or service in capital letters. _____
V219	ZA2007A_0461	Ever given birth to a live child	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-40 Has (the person) ever given birth to a live child even if the child died soon after birth? Mark appropriate box with an X. If 2 "No" Go to P-48. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V220	ZA2007A_0462	Total children ever born	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-41 Total children ever born a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _ Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.
V221	ZA2007A_0463	Male children ever born	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-41 Total children ever born a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _ Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V222	ZA2007A_0464	Female children ever born	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-41 Total children ever born a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _ Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.
V223	ZA2007A_0465	Total children surviving and living in the household	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V224	ZA2007A_0466	Malechildren surviving and living in the household	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V225	ZA2007A_0467	Female children surviving and living in the household	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V226	ZA2007A_0468	Total children surviving and living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V227	ZA2007A_0469	Male children surviving living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V228	ZA2007A_0470	Female children surviving living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups? _ _ b. How many are boys? _ _ c. How many are girls? _ _
V229	ZA2007A_0471	Total children dead	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-44 Total children no longer alive a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive? _ _ b. How many were boys? _ _ c. How many were girls? _ _
V230	ZA2007A_0472	Male children dead	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-44 Total children no longer alive a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive? _ _ b. How many were boys? _ _ c. How many were girls? _ _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V231	ZA2007A_0473	Female children dead	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-44 Total children no longer alive a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive? _ _ b. How many were boys? _ _ c. How many were girls? _ _
V232	ZA2007A_0474	Day of birth of last child	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-45 Last child born If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth? Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child. Do not count still births (children born dead.) Day _ _ Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V233	ZA2007A_0475	Month of birth of last child	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-45 Last child born If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth? Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child. Do not count still births (children born dead.) Day _ _ Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V234	ZA2007A_0476	Year of birth of last child	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-45 Last child born If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth? Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child. Do not count still births (children born dead.) Day _ _ Month _ _ Year _ _ _ _
V235	ZA2007A_0477	Sex of last child born	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-46 Is (the person)'s last born child male or female? Mark appropriate box with an X. If multiple births, indicate only last child. [] 1 Male [] 2 Female
V236	ZA2007A_0478	Last child born still alive	discrete	numeric	Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.] P-47 Last born child alive Is (the person)'s last born child still alive? Mark appropriate box with an X. If multiple births, indicate only last child. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No
V237	ZA2007A_0479	Mother still alive	discrete	numeric	Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap P-48 Mother alive Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive? Mark appropriate box with an X. If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-50. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V238	ZA2007A_0480	Mother's person number	discrete	numeric	Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap P-49 Mother's person number Who in this household is (the person's) biological mother? (column no. of biological mother). [Question P-49 was asked of persons whose own biological mother is still alive, per question P-48.] If the mother does not live in this household, write 98. _ _

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V239	ZA2007A_0481	Father still alive	discrete	numeric	Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap P-50 Father alive Is (the person)'s own biological father still alive? Mark appropriate box with an X. If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know", go to P-52. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know
V240	ZA2007A_0482	Father's person number	discrete	numeric	Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap P-51 Father's person number Who in this household is (the person)'s biological father? (column no. of biological father). [Question P-51 was asked of persons whose own biological father is still alive, per question P-50.] If the father does not live in this household, write 98. _ _
V241	ZA2007A_0483	Income (monthly/annual)	discrete	numeric	Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap P-52 Income category What is the income category that best describes the gross monthly or annual income of (the person) before deductions and including all sources of income? Read out: Monthly / Annual [] 01 No income / No income [] 02 R 1 - R 400 / R 1 - R 4 800 [] 03 R 401 - R 800 / R 4 801 - R 9 600 [] 04 R 801 - R 1 600 / R 9 601 - R 19 200 [] 05 R 1 601 - R 3 200 / R 19 201 - R 38 400 [] 06 R 3 201 - R 6 400 / R 38 401 - R 76 800 [] 07 R 6 401 - R 12 800 / R 76 801 - R 153 600 [] 08 R 12 801 - R 25 600 / R 153 601 - R 307 200 [] 09 R 25 601 - R 51 200 / R 307 201 - R 614 400 [] 10 R 51 201 - R 102 400 / R 614 401 - R 1 228 800 [] 11 R 102 401- R 204 800 / R 1 228 801- R 2 457 600 [] 12 R 204 801 or more / R 2 457 601 or more [] 13 Response not given Write code in the box. _ _
V242	ZA2007A_0484	Flag for PERNUMO	discrete	numeric	Flag for PERNUMO
V243	ZA2007A_0485	Flag for BIRDAY	discrete	numeric	Flag for BIRDAY
V244	ZA2007A_0486	Flag for BIRMON	discrete	numeric	Flag for BIRMON
V245	ZA2007A_0487	Flag for BIRYR	discrete	numeric	Flag for BIRYR
V246	ZA2007A_0488	Flag for AGE	discrete	numeric	Flag for AGE
V247	ZA2007A_0489	Flag for SEX	discrete	numeric	Flag for SEX
V248	ZA2007A_0490	Flag for STAY4NIT	discrete	numeric	Flag for STAY4NIT
V249	ZA2007A_0491	Flag for LASTNIT	discrete	numeric	Flag for LASTNIT
V250	ZA2007A_0492	Flag for RELATE	discrete	numeric	Flag for RELATE
V251	ZA2007A_0493	Flag for MARST	discrete	numeric	Flag for MARST
V252	ZA2007A_0494	Flag for SPLOCO	discrete	numeric	Flag for SPLOCO
V253	ZA2007A_0495	Flag for RACE	discrete	numeric	Flag for RACE
V254	ZA2007A_0496	Flag for BPLPR	discrete	numeric	Flag for BPLPR
V255	ZA2007A_0497	Flag for BPLPL	discrete	numeric	Flag for BPLPL
V256	ZA2007A_0498	Flag for BPLSUB	discrete	numeric	Flag for BPLSUB
V257	ZA2007A_0499	Flag for RESPL	discrete	numeric	Flag for RESPL
V258	ZA2007A_0500	Flag for RESSUB	discrete	numeric	Flag for RESSUB
V259	ZA2007A_0501	Flag for HERE5YR	discrete	numeric	Flag for HERE5YR
V260	ZA2007A_0502	Flag for HEREMON	discrete	numeric	Flag for HEREMON
V261	ZA2007A_0503	Flag for HEREYR	discrete	numeric	Flag for HEREYR
V262	ZA2007A_0504	Flag for RESPRPR	discrete	numeric	Flag for RESPRPR
V263	ZA2007A_0505	Flag for RESPRPL	discrete	numeric	Flag for RESPRPL
V264	ZA2007A_0506	Flag for RESPRSUB	discrete	numeric	Flag for RESPRSUB

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V265	ZA2007A_0507	Flag for DISAB	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISAB
V266	ZA2007A_0508	Flag for DISABS	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABS
V267	ZA2007A_0509	Flag for DISABH	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABH
V268	ZA2007A_0510	Flag for DISABC	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABC
V269	ZA2007A_0511	Flag for DISABP	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABP
V270	ZA2007A_0512	Flag for DISABI	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABI
V271	ZA2007A_0513	Flag for DISABE	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABE
V272	ZA2007A_0514	Flag for DISABLA	discrete	numeric	Flag for DISABLA
V273	ZA2007A_0515	Flag for GRANT	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANT
V274	ZA2007A_0516	Flag for GRANTOA	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTOA
V275	ZA2007A_0517	Flag for GRANTD	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTD
V276	ZA2007A_0518	Flag for GRANTCS	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTCS
V277	ZA2007A_0519	Flag for GRANTDC	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTDC
V278	ZA2007A_0520	Flag for GRANTFC	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTFC
V279	ZA2007A_0521	Flag for GRANTIA	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTIA
V280	ZA2007A_0522	Flag for GRANTSR	discrete	numeric	Flag for GRANTSR
V281	ZA2007A_0523	Flag for SCHOOL	discrete	numeric	Flag for SCHOOL
V282	ZA2007A_0524	Flag for SCHLLEV	discrete	numeric	Flag for SCHLLEV
V283	ZA2007A_0525	Flag for SCHLPUB	discrete	numeric	Flag for SCHLPUB
V284	ZA2007A_0526	Flag for EDATTAN	discrete	numeric	Flag for EDATTAN
V285	ZA2007A_0527	Flag for WKBUS	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKBUS
V286	ZA2007A_0528	Flag for WKPAY	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKPAY
V287	ZA2007A_0529	Flag for WKDOM	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKDOM
V288	ZA2007A_0530	Flag for WKHHBUS	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKHHBUS
V289	ZA2007A_0531	Flag for WKPLOT	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKPLOT
V290	ZA2007A_0532	Flag for WKREPAIR	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKREPAIR
V291	ZA2007A_0533	Flag for WKHUNT	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKHUNT
V292	ZA2007A_0534	Flag for WKNOTNOW	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKNOTNOW
V293	ZA2007A_0535	Flag for WKWHYNOT	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKWHYNOT
V294	ZA2007A_0536	Flag for WKAVAIL	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKAVAIL
V295	ZA2007A_0537	Flag for WKLOOK	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKLOOK
V296	ZA2007A_0538	Flag for WKBUSNEW	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKBUSNEW
V297	ZA2007A_0539	Flag for CLASSWK	discrete	numeric	Flag for CLASSWK
V298	ZA2007A_0540	Flag for WKFORMAL	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKFORMAL
V299	ZA2007A_0541	Flag for OCC	discrete	numeric	Flag for OCC
V300	ZA2007A_0542	Flag for WKNAME	discrete	numeric	Flag for WKNAME
V301	ZA2007A_0543	Flag for IND	discrete	numeric	Flag for IND
V302	ZA2007A_0544	Flag for ANYKIDS	discrete	numeric	Flag for ANYKIDS
V303	ZA2007A_0545	Flag for CHBORN	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHBORN
V304	ZA2007A_0546	Flag for CHBORNM	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHBORNM

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V305	ZA2007A_0547	Flag for CHBORNF	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHBORNF
V306	ZA2007A_0548	Flag for CHSURVH	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVH
V307	ZA2007A_0549	Flag for CHSURVHM	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVHM
V308	ZA2007A_0550	Flag for CHSURVHF	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVHF
V309	ZA2007A_0551	Flag for CHSURVE	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVE
V310	ZA2007A_0552	Flag for CHSURVEM	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVEM
V311	ZA2007A_0553	Flag for CHSURVEF	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHSURVEF
V312	ZA2007A_0554	Flag for CHDEAD	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHDEAD
V313	ZA2007A_0555	Flag for CHDEADM	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHDEADM
V314	ZA2007A_0556	Flag for CHDEADF	discrete	numeric	Flag for CHDEADF
V315	ZA2007A_0557	Flag for LSTCHDAY	discrete	numeric	Flag for LSTCHDAY
V316	ZA2007A_0560	Flag for LSTCHSEX	discrete	numeric	Flag for LSTCHSEX
V317	ZA2007A_0561	Flag for LSTCHLIV	discrete	numeric	Flag for LSTCHLIV
V318	ZA2007A_0562	Flag for MOMLIV	discrete	numeric	Flag for MOMLIV
V319	ZA2007A_0563	Flag for MOMLOCO	discrete	numeric	Flag for MOMLOCO
V320	ZA2007A_0564	Flag for POPLIV	discrete	numeric	Flag for POPLIV
V321	ZA2007A_0565	Flag for POPLOCO	discrete	numeric	Flag for POPLOCO
V322	ZA2007A_0566	Flag for INCOMEGR	discrete	numeric	Flag for INCOMEGR
V323	ZA2007A_0567	Weight: design weights	contin	numeric	Weight: design weights

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V324	ZA2007A_0568	Employment status (official definition)	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-31 Temporary absence from work Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to? [Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence. If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know P-32 Reasons for not working Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days? [Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future [] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work [] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work [] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work [] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped) [] 06 Too young or too old to work [] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer [] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs [] 09 Cannot find work [] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory) [] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract [] 12 Retrenched [] 13 Other reason Write code in the box. _ _ P-33 Availability for work If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work? [Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 1 Within a week [] 2 Within two weeks [] 3 Within four weeks [] 4 More than four weeks from now [] 5 Not interested [] 6 Not able (health or disability) [] 7 Do not know Write code in the box. _ P-34 Active steps seeking work During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work? [Question P-34 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know P-35 Active steps seeking work During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business? [Question P-35 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] If P-34 and P-35 completed Go to P-40 Mark appropriate box with an X. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V325	ZA2007A_0569	Employment status (expanded definition)	discrete	numeric	Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap [Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.] P-30 Employment status P-31 Temporary absence from work Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to? [Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence. If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know P-32 Reasons for not working Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days? [Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future [] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work [] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work [] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work [] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped) [] 06 Too young or too old to work [] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer [] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs [] 09 Cannot find work [] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory) [] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract [] 12 Retrenched [] 13 Other reason Write code in the box. _ _ P-33 Availability for work If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work? [Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.] [] 1 Within a week [] 2 Within two weeks [] 3 Within four weeks [] 4 More than four weeks from now [] 5 Not interested [] 6 Not able (health or disability) [] 7 Do not know Write code in the box. _
V326	ZA2007A_0570	Derived disability	discrete	numeric	P-21 Disability Does (the person) have any kind of disability? Mark appropriate box with an X If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-24. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know P-22 Disability type What type(s) of disability does (the person) have? [Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.] Mark any that apply with an X. Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection. Read out: [] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation [] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) [] 3 Communication (speech impairment) [] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.) [] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) [] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
V327	ZA2007A_0571	Derived social grant	discrete	numeric	P-24 Social grant Does (the person) receive any social / government grant? Mark appropriate box with an X If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-26. [] 1 Yes [] 2 No [] 3 Do not know P-25 Type of social grant What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive? [Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.] Mark any that apply with an X. [] 1 Old age pension [] 2 Disability grant [] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child) [] 4 Care dependency grant [] 5 Foster care grant [] 6 Grant in aid [] 7 Social relief
V328	ZA2007A_0572	Province of usual residence (2001 classification)	discrete	numeric	P-14 Main place of usual residence In which city, town, township, or tribal area does (the person) usually live? Write the name of the place in capital letters. ____
V329	ZA2007A_0573	Weight: average adjusted	contin	numeric	Weight: average adjusted
V330	ZA2007A_0575	Weight: survey less unoccupied	contin	numeric	Weight: survey less unoccupied
V331	ZA2007A_0576	Weight: survey adjusted all non-response	contin	numeric	Weight: survey adjusted all non-response

ID	Name	Label	Type	Format	Question
V332	ZA2007A_0577	Weight: survey final provincial weights	contin	numeric	Weight: survey final provincial weights
V333	ZA2007A_0578	Type of dwelling, CS scope	discrete	numeric	Type of dwelling, CS scope
V334	ZA2007A_0579	Weight: final municipal de-facto weights	contin	numeric	Weight: final municipal de-facto weights
V335	ZA2007A_0580	Weight: final municipal de-jure weights	contin	numeric	Weight: final municipal de-jure weights
V336	PERWT	Person weight	contin	numeric	
V337	AWAYMALE	Number of own male children living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	
V338	DISABLED	Disability status	discrete	numeric	
V339	LASTBYR	Year of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V340	MIGYRS2	Years residing in current dwelling	discrete	numeric	
V341	LASTBSEX	Sex of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V342	HOMEMALE	Number of own male children in household	discrete	numeric	
V343	YRSCHOOL	Years of schooling	discrete	numeric	
V344	MIGRATEP	Migration status, previous residence	discrete	numeric	
V345	EDATTAIN	Educational attainment, international recode [general version]	discrete	numeric	
V346	EDATTAIND	Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version]	discrete	numeric	
V347	LASTBMO	Month of last birth	discrete	numeric	
V348	HOMECHILD	Number of own children in household	discrete	numeric	
V349	AWAYCHILD	Number of own children living elsewhere	discrete	numeric	
V350	MIGHOUSE	Same house 5 years ago	discrete	numeric	
V351	MIGPLCZA	Same place 5 years ago, South Africa	discrete	numeric	
V352	NATIVITY	Nativity status	discrete	numeric	
V353	CHDEADFEM	Number of female children dead	discrete	numeric	
V354	CHDEADMALE	Number of male children dead	discrete	numeric	
V355	YEARP	Year [person version]	contin	numeric	
V356	SAMPLEP	IPUMS sample identifier [person version]	contin	numeric	
V357	SERIAL	Household serial number [person version]	contin	numeric	
V358	COUNTRYP	Country [person version]	contin	numeric	
V359	RECTYPEP	Record type [person version]	discrete	character	

Record type (RECTYPE)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: character	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	

Description

RECTYPE identifies the type of record for the case: household or person.

NOTE: RECTYPE is an alphabetic (character string) variable with a value of 'H' for household records and 'P' for person records. RECTYPE will not appear as a variable in the default rectangular extracts produced by the data extract system. It is only available in hierarchical extracts, to distinguish between the two record types.

Year (YEAR)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 4	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1960-2011	

Description

YEAR gives the year in which the census was taken.

IPUMS sample identifier (SAMPLE)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 9	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 32197001-894201001	

Description

SAMPLE identifies the IPUMS sample from which the case is drawn. Each sample receives a unique 9-digit code. The code is structured as follows:

The first 3 digits are the ISO/UN codes used in COUNTRY

The next 4 digits are the year of the census/survey

The final 2 digits identify the sample within the year. For the last two digits, censuses or large census-like surveys have a value "0" (e.g, 01) in the second-to-last digit, household surveys have a value of "2" (e.g., 21), and employment surveys have a value of "4" (e.g., 41).

Household serial number (SERIAL)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Household serial number (SERIAL)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SERIAL is an identifying number unique to each household in a given sample. All person records are assigned the same serial number as the household record that they follow. (Person records also have their own unique identifiers -- see PERNUM.) The combination of SAMPLE and SERIAL provides a unique identifier for every household in the IPUMS-International database; SAMPLE, SERIAL and PERNUM uniquely identify every person in the database.

SERIAL can be used to identify dwellings in some samples. In these samples, the first 7 digits of SERIAL provide the dwelling number common to all households that were sampled from the same structure. The last three digits give the sequence of the household within the dwelling. The following is a list of samples in which dwellings can be inferred:

Chile 1970, 1992, 2002
Colombia 1993, 2005
Costa Rica 1984, 2000
Cuba 2002
Dominican Republic 1981, 2002, 2010
Ecuador 1990, 2001
Germany 1971
Hungary 1980, 1990, 2001
Jamaica 1982, 1991, 2001
Malaysia 1970, 1991, 2000
Mexico 1995, 1990, 2000, 2005
Nigeria 2006
Panama 2000
Peru 1993, 2007
Portugal 1981, 1991, 2001
Spain 1991
Uruguay 2011
Venezuela 1990, 2001
Vietnam 1989

In all other samples, the last 3 digits are always zeroes.

SERIAL was constructed for IPUMS-International, and has no relation to the serial number in the original datasets.

Number of person records in the household (PERSONS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PERSONS indicates how many person records are included in the household (i.e., the number of person records associated with the household record in the sample). These person records will all have the same serial number (SERIAL) as the household record. The information contained in the household record will normally apply to all of these persons.

Subsample number (SUBSAMP)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Subsample number (SUBSAMP)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SUBSAMP allocates each case to one of 100 subsample replicates, randomly numbered from 0 to 99. Each subsample is nationally representative and preserves any stratification of the sample from which it is drawn. Users who need a representative subset of a sample can use SUBSAMP to select their cases. For example, to randomly extract 10% of the cases from a sample, select any 10 of the 100 subsamples.

Group quarters (collective dwelling) status (GQ)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GQ identifies households as vacant dwellings, group quarters, or private households. Group quarters -- collective dwellings -- are generally institutions and other group living arrangements such as rooming houses and boarding schools.

Institutions often retain persons under formal supervision or custody, such as correctional institutions, military barracks, asylums, or nursing homes. Educational and religious group dwellings (e.g., boarding schools, convents, monasteries, etc.) are also included in the institutional classification.

Group quarter designations are often useful for understanding the universe of households that answered questions about household characteristics. Censuses will often exclude group quarters from such questions.

Number of unrelated persons (UNREL)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

UNREL indicates the number of persons in the household who are unrelated to the head.

Urban-rural status (URBAN)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Urban-rural status (URBAN)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

URBAN indicates whether the household was located in a place designated as urban or as rural.

Continent and region of country (REGIONW)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 11-54

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

REGIONW identifies the continent and region of each country.

South Africa, Municipality (MUNIZA)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 11-984

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MUNIZA identifies the household's municipality within South Africa from 2001 to present. Municipalities are the third level administrative units of the country, after district council. MUNIZA is harmonized by name and does not account for boundary changes over time.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

Water supply (WATSUP)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

WATSUP describes the physical means by which the housing unit receives its water. The primary distinction is whether or not the household had piped (running) water.

Telephone availability (PHONE)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

PHONE indicates the availability of a telephone in the dwelling.

Cellular phone availability (CELL)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

CELL indicates the availability of a cellular phone in the household.

Trash disposal (TRASH)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates whether the household's waste or garbage is collected by a sanitation service or disposed of in some other manner.

Refrigerator (REFRIG)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

REFRIG indicates whether the household had a refrigerator.

Television set (TV)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Television set (TV)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

TV indicates whether the household had a television.

Radio in household (RADIO)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

RADIO indicates whether the household had a radio.

Number of rooms (ROOMS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

ROOMS indicates the number of rooms occupied by the housing unit.

Toilet (TOILET)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

TOILET indicates whether the household had access to a toilet and, in most cases, whether it was a flush toilet or other type of installation.

Number of deaths in household last year (MORTNUM)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Number of deaths in household last year (MORTNUM)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

MORTNUM indicates the number of deaths in the household in the past year.

Any deaths in household last year (ANYMORT)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

ANYMORT indicates whether there were any deaths in the household in the past year.

Household classification (HHTYPE)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

HHTYPE is a constructed variable that describes the composition of households.
HHTYPE is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head), from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father), and from information on group quarters status, GQ.

Number of families in household (NFAMS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

Number of families in household (NFAMS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

NFAMS is a constructed variable that indicates the number of families within each household. A "family" is any group of persons related by blood, adoption, or marriage. An unrelated individual within the household is considered a separate family. Thus, a household consisting of a widow and her servant contains two families; a household consisting of a large, multiple-generation extended family with no lodgers or servants would count as a single family.

NFAMS is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head) and from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father). See those variable descriptions for more detail.

Head's location in household (HEADLOC)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

HEADLOC gives the person number of the head of household in samples in which persons are organized into households.

1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time] (GEOLEV1)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 32002-894010

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEOLEV1 indicates the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. First administrative units in GEOLEV1 have been spatiotemporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

Dwelling number (ZA2007A_0001)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the dwelling number.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Dwelling number

Urban (ZA2007A_0022)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-5

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of geographic area in which the household is located.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Particulars of the household

Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _
Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____

Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

Total number of persons in the household _ _

Number of males _ _
Number of females _ _

Number of questionnaires for this household _

Interviewer instructions

Types of geographical areas and EA types

There are four types of geographical areas that are within the scope of coverage of the Community Survey. These are:

urban formal,
urban informal,
commercial farms, and
tribal areas

Enumeration area type (ZA2007A_0024)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the enumeration area type.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Enumeration area type

Enumeration area type (ZA2007A_0024)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Interviewer instructions

Types of geographical areas and EA types

There are four types of geographical areas that are within the scope of coverage of the Community Survey. These are:

urban formal,
urban informal,
commercial farms, and
tribal areas

All EA types (mentioned below) are within the scope of the Community Survey:

Vacant EA (Type 0)
Tribal EA (Type 1)
Farm EA (Type 2)
Smallholding EA (Type 3)
Urban EA (Type 4)
Informal EA (Type 5)
Recreational (Type 6)
Industrial (Type 7)
Institutions (Type 8)
Hostels (Type 9)

Household number (ZA2007A_0026)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-999	

Description

This variable indicates the household number (within the dwelling).

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Household number

Interviewer instructions

Household number for this household
If one household is found at the selected dwelling, record "01" in the blocks provided. When more than one household is found at one dwelling unit, assign a separate household number to each household. Example: if there are three households occupying the same dwelling, with each household staying in a room and sharing the kitchen, you will enumerate each family as a separate household, meaning that you will have three questionnaires from this dwelling unit. On each questionnaire you will write the household number for the respective household as identified, i.e. 01, 02, 03 in the blocks provided.

Type of dwelling (ZA2007A_0028)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-12

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of dwelling in which the household lives.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-01 Type of main dwelling
Which of the following types best describes the main dwelling unit that this household occupies?

If this household lives in More than one dwelling, write the code of the main dwelling that the household occupies in the box.
Read out:
[] 01 House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard
[] 02 Traditional dwelling/ hut /structure made of traditional material
[] 03 Flat in block of flats
[] 04 Town/ cluster/ semi-detached house (simplex, duplex, triplex)
[] 05 House/flat/room in backyard
[] 06 Informal dwelling/ shack in backyard
[] 07 Informal dwelling/ shack not in backyard e.g. in informal/ squatter settlement
[] 08 Room/ flatlet not in backyard but on a shared property
[] 09 Caravan or tent
[] 10 Private ship/boat
[] 11 Workers' hostel (bed/room)
[] 12 Other (specify) _____

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(H-01) Type of main dwelling: Which of the following types best describes the main dwelling unit that this household occupies?
Record by observation, where possible, otherwise the enumerator should read out the different descriptions to the respondent.

If the household lives in more than one dwelling, mark the dwelling-type of the main dwelling. By main dwelling we mean the dwelling where most members of the household spend most of their time.

Note that a traditional dwelling is regarded as a dwelling that is built from traditional materials such as mud, thatch, grass, etc.

The question should be answered in relation to the dwelling unit for that household. So a household in a separate dwelling unit such as a backyard room will answer accordingly. This is another reason why domestic workers, for example, are captured on their own questionnaires.

Option 01 refers to a structure being on a separate stand or stands on its own, meaning that the stand has boundaries that separate it from the neighbours.

Option 02: Is for a traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials.
Persons living in a room/bed in a hostel must be recorded under option 11.

Number of rooms (ZA2007A_0029)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Number of rooms (ZA2007A_0029)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-25

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of rooms (including kitchens) for the household (excluding bathrooms, stables, garages, etc. unless there are people living in them).

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-02 Rooms
How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household?

Count all rooms in all dwellings.
Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc. unless persons are living in them.

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(H-02) Rooms: How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household?
Count all rooms in all dwellings occupied by this household. Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc., unless persons are living in them.

[p.60]

Write the correct number of rooms in the box, for example, if there are 4 rooms, write 04. If three families share a four-roomed house meaning that they occupy one room each and share the kitchen, write 02. Notice that the question does not ask how many rooms there are in the dwelling unit but how many rooms there are for the household to use.

Access to water (ZA2007A_0030)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of access to water for the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-03 Access to water
In which way does this household obtain water for domestic use?

[] 1 Piped water inside the dwelling
[] 2 Piped water inside the yard
[] 3 Piped water from access point outside the yard
[] 4 Borehole
[] 5 Spring
[] 6 Dam/pool
[] 7 River/stream
[] 8 Water vendor
[] 9 Rain water tank
[] 0 Other
Write only one code in the box.

_

Access to water (ZA2007A_0030)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Interviewer instructions

(H-03) Access to water: In which way does this household obtain WATER for domestic use?
Read out the different options to the respondent and write the applicable code in the box.
Mark the main source only. If people get water from two sources they should specify the source they use for drinking and food preparation.

If the response is '1-Piped water inside the dwelling' or '2-Piped water inside yard'.

Municipal water service provider (ZA2007A_0031)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household gets water from a municipal service provider.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-04 Service provider
Does the household get water from the Municipality (Regional/ Local water scheme)?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

(H-04) Service provider: Does the household get water from a Municipality (Regional/local water scheme)?

Distance from water access point (ZA2007A_0032)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-4

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the distance from the household to the water access point.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Distance from water access point (ZA2007A_0032)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-05 Distance from water access point
What is the distance from water access point?

[] 1 Less than 200m
[] 2 Between 200m and 500m
[] 3 Between 500m and 1km
[] 4 More than 1km
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-05) Distance from water access point: What is the distance from water access point?
Read out. Write only one code in the box.

Toilet facility (ZA2007A_0033)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-8

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of toilet facility used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-06 Toilet facilities
What is the main type of toilet facility available for use by this household?

Read out:
[] 1 Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)
[] 2 Flush toilet (with septic tank)
[] 3 Dry toilet facility
[] 4 Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)
[] 5 Pit toilet without ventilation
[] 6 Chemical toilet
[] 7 Bucket toilet system
[] 8 None
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-06) Toilet facilities: What is the main type of toilet facility available for use by this household?
Read out types of toilet facilities.

If more than one facility, mark the one that is most frequently used.

A chemical toilet is a toilet consisting of a seat or bowl attached to a container holding a chemical solution that changes waste into sludge/mud.

A dry toilet is a simple pit latrine that does not need water to function. It consists of a hole in the ground that can be covered when full or emptied for re-use after a period of stabilization. It may or may not have a urine diversion.

Energy or fuel for cooking (ZA2007A_0034)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of energy or fuel for cooking used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-07 Energy/fuel for cooking
What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking?

[] 1 Electricity
[] 2 Gas
[] 3 Paraffin
[] 4 Wood
[] 5 Coal
[] 7 Animal dung
[] 8 Solar
[] 9 Other (specify) _____
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-07) Energy/fuel for cooking: What type of energy/fuel does this household use mainly for cooking?
Mark one code. If more than one used, mark the main one only. If it is "Other" mark code 9 and specify.

Write in capital letters.

Energy or fuel for heating (ZA2007A_0035)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of energy or fuel for heating used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Energy or fuel for heating (ZA2007A_0035)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-08 Energy / fuel for heating
What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for heating?

[] 1 Electricity
[] 2 Gas
[] 3 Paraffin
[] 4 Wood
[] 5 Coal
[] 7 Animal dung
[] 8 Solar
[] 9 Other (specify) _____
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-08) Energy/fuel for heating: What type of energy/fuel does this household use mainly for heating?
Mark one code. If it is "Other" mark code 9 and specify. Write in capital letters.

Energy or fuel for lighting (ZA2007A_0036)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of energy or fuel for lighting used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-09 Energy / fuel for lighting
What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for lighting?

[] 1 Electricity
[] 2 Gas
[] 3 Paraffin
[] 6 Candles
[] 8 Solar
[] 9 Other (specify) _____
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-09) Energy/fuel for lighting: What type of energy/fuel does this household use mainly for lighting?
Mark one code. If it is "Other" mark code 9 and specify. Write in capital letters.

Refrigerator (ZA2007A_0037)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Refrigerator (ZA2007A_0037)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a refrigerator.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Refrigerator

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Radio (ZA2007A_0038)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a radio.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Radio (ZA2007A_0038)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Radio

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Television (ZA2007A_0039)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a television.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Television (ZA2007A_0039)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Television

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Computer (ZA2007A_0040)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a computer.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Computer (ZA2007A_0040)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Computer

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Landline telephone facilities (ZA2007A_0041)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a landline telephone.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Landline telephone facilities (ZA2007A_0041)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Landline telephone

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Internet facilities (ZA2007A_0042)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has internet facilities.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Internet facilities (ZA2007A_0042)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Internet facilities at home

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Post facilities (mail postbox) (ZA2007A_0043)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has post facilities (mail postbox).

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Post facilities (mail postbox) (ZA2007A_0043)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Post facilities (Mail postbox)

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Cell phone (ZA2007A_0044)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the household has a cell phone.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Cell phone (ZA2007A_0044)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-10 Household goods
Does the household have any of the following?

Mark appropriate box with an X

Cellphone

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(H-10) Household goods: Does the household have any of the following?
Mark each item/facility that the household has with an X.

All these items should be in working order. If the person can receive calls on the landline telephone or cell phone but cannot use the phone to make calls, this still qualifies as a "Yes".

Mark the "Yes" box for cell phones if at least one member of the household has the full-time use of one.

If more than one household has the right to use an item, e.g., a refrigerator or a computer in a common space, mark the "Yes" box.

The purpose is not to look at the number of items in the dwelling unit, but rather to measure how many households have access to these items.

In order to have Internet facilities, the person should also have a computer and a cell phone and/or a landline telephone. We are referring to Internet facilities and a computer in the household not those that the person may have access to at work.

Tenure status (ZA2007A_0045)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-5

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the arrangements under which the household occupies the dwelling.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Tenure status (ZA2007A_0045)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

H-11 Tenure status
What is the tenure status of this household?

If the household uses several dwellings, write the code for the main dwelling in the box.
Read out:
[] 1 Owned and fully paid off
[] 2 Owned but not yet paid off
[] 3 Rented
[] 4 Occupied rent-free
[] 5 Other (specify) ___
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-11) Tenure status: What is the tenure status of this household?
Tenure status determines on what terms the household occupies the dwelling.

If the household uses several dwellings, write the code for the main dwelling. If the response is "other", remember to specify. Write in capital letters.

Refuse or rubbish (ZA2007A_0046)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of refuse or rubbish removal used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

H-12 Refuse disposal
How is the refuse or rubbish from this household mainly disposed of?

Read out:
1 Removed by local authority/ private company at least once a week
2 Removed by local authority/ private company less often
3 Communal refuse dump
4 Own refuse dump
5 No rubbish disposal
6 Other (specify) ___
Write only one code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

(H-11) Refuse disposal: How is the refuse or rubbish from this household mainly disposed of?
The enumerator should read out the different options to the respondent. Only one response may be given.

If more than one response is applicable, mark the code for main service.

Flag for DWTYPE (ZA2007A_0047)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Flag for DWTYPE (ZA2007A_0047)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of dwelling.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for DWTYPE

Flag for ROOMS (ZA2007A_0048)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the number of rooms used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for ROOMS

Flag for WATSRC (ZA2007A_0049)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of access the household has to water.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for WATSRC

Flag for WATSERV (ZA2007A_0050)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

60

Flag for WATSERV (ZA2007A_0050)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the household gets water from the municipal service provider.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for WATSERV

Flag for WATDIST (ZA2007A_0051)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the distance from the household to the water access point.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for WATDIST

Flag for TOILET (ZA2007A_0052)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of toilet facility used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for TOILET

Flag for COOKENER (ZA2007A_0053)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

61

Flag for COOKENER (ZA2007A_0053)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of energy or fuel used by the household for cooking.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for COOKENER

Flag for HEATENER (ZA2007A_0054)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of energy or fuel used by the household for heating.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for HEATENER

Flag for LIGHTENR (ZA2007A_0055)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of energy or fuel used by the household for lighting.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for LIGHTENR

Flag for REFRIG (ZA2007A_0056)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Flag for REFRIG (ZA2007A_0056)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has a refrigerator.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for REFRIG

Flag for RADIO (ZA2007A_0057)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has a radio.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for RADIO

Flag for TV (ZA2007A_0058)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has a television.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for TV

Flag for COMPUTER (ZA2007A_0059)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

63

Flag for COMPUTER (ZA2007A_0059)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has a computer.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for COMPUTER

Flag for PHONE (ZA2007A_0060)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has landline telephone facilities.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for PHONE

Flag for INTERNET (ZA2007A_0061)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has internet facilities.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for INTERNET

Flag for POSTAL (ZA2007A_0062)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Flag for POSTAL (ZA2007A_0062)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has post facilities (mail postbox).

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for POSTAL

Flag for CELLPHON (ZA2007A_0063)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether or not the household has a cell phone.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for CELLPHON

Flag for TENURE (ZA2007A_0064)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the tenure status of the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for TENURE

Flag for REFUSE (ZA2007A_0065)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Flag for REFUSE (ZA2007A_0065)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the type of refuse or rubbish disposal used by the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Flag for REFUSE

Design weights (ZA2007A_0066)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the design weight for the household.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Design weights

Average adjusted weights (ZA2007A_0067)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the average adjusted weight for the household.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Average adjusted weights

Derived race/ethnicity of head of household (ZA2007A_0068)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Derived race/ethnicity of head of household (ZA2007A_0068)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-4

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the derived population group of the head of household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Derived race/ethnicity of head of household

Derived sex of head of household (ZA2007A_0069)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the derived sex of the head of household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Derived sex of head of household

Derived majority race/ethnicity (ZA2007A_0070)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-4

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the derived majority population group for the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Derived majority race/ethnicity

Household size (ZA2007A_0071)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Household size (ZA2007A_0071)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-32

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the size of the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Household size

Annual household income (ZA2007A_0072)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 7
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the annual household income in rands.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Annual household income

Community survey less unoccupied weights (ZA2007A_0073)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the community survey less unoccupied weights.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Community survey less unoccupied weights

Community survey adjusted all non-response weights (ZA2007A_0074)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Community survey adjusted all non-response weights (ZA2007A_0074)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the community survey adjusted all non-response weights.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Community survey adjusted all non-response weights

Community survey final provincial weights (ZA2007A_0075)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the Community Survey final provincial weights.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Community survey final provincial weights

Community survey scope status (ZA2007A_0076)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the community survey scope status.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Community survey scope status

Community Survey final municipal weights (ZA2007A_0077)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Community Survey final municipal weights (ZA2007A_0077)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the community survey final municipal weights.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Community Survey final municipal weights

Number of mortality records (ZA2007A_0099)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-8

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of mortality records associated with the household.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Number of mortality records

Number of males (ZA2007A_0102)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of males in the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Number of males (ZA2007A_0102)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Particulars of the household

Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _
Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____

Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

Total number of persons in the household _ _

Number of males _ _
Number of females _ _

Number of questionnaires for this household _

Interviewer instructions

Total number of persons in the household
This refers to the total number of people enumerated in the household, as listed on the flap. Please remember that more than one questionnaire may have been used and the total of all persons on each questionnaire should be recorded.

Regarding the "total number of people in the household" when more than one questionnaires are used, add up the totals from all the questionnaires used for the household and write the number on each questionnaire. Hence, the totals written on each questionnaire will always reflect the total number of people in the household and not just the subset of persons that was entered in a given questionnaire.

The total number of people in the households should be equal to the total number of males plus the total number of females in the household.

Number of Males. This refers to the total number of males as recorded on the flap. Please remember to add all males if more than one questionnaire has been used.

Number of Females. This refers to the total number of females as recorded on the flap. Please remember to add all females if more than one questionnaire has been used.

Number of females (ZA2007A_0103)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of females in the household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Number of females (ZA2007A_0103)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Particulars of the household

Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _
Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____

Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

Total number of persons in the household _ _

Number of males _ _
Number of females _ _

Number of questionnaires for this household _

Interviewer instructions

Total number of persons in the household
This refers to the total number of people enumerated in the household, as listed on the flap. Please remember that more than one questionnaire may have been used and the total of all persons on each questionnaire should be recorded.

Regarding the "total number of people in the household" when more than one questionnaires are used, add up the totals from all the questionnaires used for the household and write the number on each questionnaire. Hence, the totals written on each questionnaire will always reflect the total number of people in the household and not just the subset of persons that was entered in a given questionnaire.

The total number of people in the households should be equal to the total number of males plus the total number of females in the household.

Number of Males. This refers to the total number of males as recorded on the flap. Please remember to add all males if more than one questionnaire has been used.

Number of Females. This refers to the total number of females as recorded on the flap. Please remember to add all females if more than one questionnaire has been used.

Number of questionnaires for this household (ZA2007A_0104)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of questionnaires for this household.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Number of questionnaires for this household (ZA2007A_0104)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Particulars of the household

Enumeration area number _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Dwelling unit number _ _ _ _
Physical identification of the dwelling unit _____

Landline telephone number of enumerated household (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
Cellphone number (if any) _ _ _ - _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

Total number of persons in the household _ _

Number of males _ _
Number of females _ _

Number of questionnaires for this household _

Interviewer instructions

Number of questionnaires for this household
This depends on the number of persons in the household. If they are less than 10, then only one questionnaire is used in that household. You will record "1" in the block provided. However, in households where there are more than 10 persons, more than one questionnaire is used. You will record "2" on both questionnaires respectively in the blocks provided.

If more than one questionnaire was completed for one household (more than 10 persons in the household), write the barcode of the first questionnaire in the box provided on the last page of the 2nd questionnaire.

Total number of households at the selected dwelling (ZA2007A_0105)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the total number of households in the selected dwelling.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Households at the selected dwelling

Household number of this household _ _
Total number of households at the selected dwelling _ _

Was this questionnaire subjected to quality control (or checks) by any Community Survey personnel other than the supervisor? Mark the appropriate box with an X.

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

Total number of households at the selected dwelling
If one household is found at the selected dwelling record "01" in the blocks provided. When more than one household is found at one dwelling, write the total number of households in the provided blocks.

Questionnaire quality control (by CS personnel) (ZA2007A_0106)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the questionnaire was subjected to a quality control by any Community Survey personnel other than the enumerator.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Households at the selected dwelling

Household number of this household _ _
Total number of households at the selected dwelling _ _

Was this questionnaire subjected to quality control (or checks) by any Community Survey personnel other than the supervisor? Mark the appropriate box with an X.

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

Was this questionnaire subjected to quality control (or checks) by any Community Survey personnel other than the Fieldwork Supervisor?
You are not required to answer this question.

Any deaths (ZA2007A_0113)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether anyone in the household died in the past year.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Any deaths (ZA2007A_0113)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Section I: Mortality in the last 12 months - (between February 2006 and March 2007)

Read out: I am now going to ask for information on any member of the household who has passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007.

M-00 Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If no, the questionnaire is completed. Thank the respondent(s).
[] Yes
[] No

Interviewer instructions

(M-00) Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months?
If "No", the questionnaire is complete. Thank the respondent(s).

Number of deaths (ZA2007A_0114)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of deaths that occurred in the household in the past year.

Universe

Non-institutional households

Literal question

Section I: Mortality in the last 12 months - (between February 2006 and March 2007)

M-00 Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months between February 2006 and March 2007?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If no, the questionnaire is completed. Thank the respondent(s).
[] Yes
[] No

M-01 How many members passed away?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Number of deaths (ZA2007A_0114)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

(M-00) Has any member of this household passed away in the last 12 months?
If "No", the questionnaire is complete. Thank the respondent(s).

(M-01): How many members passed away?
If "Yes" on M-00, write the number in the box.

Strata (ZA2007A_0115)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 5
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. Strata is a constructed variable that captures implicit geographic stratification resulting from the sample design. It is created by assigning a unique identifier to groups of between 10 and 19 adjacent households. Additional documentation is available on the Variance Estimation page.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Strata

Household weight (HHWT)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 8
Decimals: 2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

HHWT indicates the number of households in the population represented by the household in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), HHWT must be used to yield accurate household-level statistics.

NOTE: HHWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time] (GEOLEV2)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time] (GEOLEV2)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0
Range: 32002001-888888888

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEOLEV2 indicates the second major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. Second administrative units in GEOLEV2 have been spatio-temporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

South Africa, Province 2001 - 2011 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS] (GEO1_ZA)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 710001-710999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO1_ZA identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa from 2001 to present. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. GEO1_ZA is spatially harmonized accounting for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

South Africa, Province 2007 [Level 1, GIS] (GEO1_ZA2007)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO1_ZA2007 identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa in 2007. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA2007 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

South Africa, District council 2001 - 2011 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS] (GEO2_ZA)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0
Range: 710001001-710999999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO2_ ZA identifies the household's district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa from 2001 to present. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after province. GEO2_ZA is spatially harmonized to account for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

South Africa, District council 2007 [Level 2, GIS] (GEO2_ZA2007)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 6
Decimals: 0
Range: 1001-9047

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

GEO2_ZA2007 identifies the household?s district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa in 2007. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after provinces. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA2007 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

Number of married couples in household (NCOUPLES)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NCOUPLES is a constructed variable indicating the number of married/in-union couples within a household.

NCOUPLES is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable SPLOC (spouse's location in the household).

Number of mothers in household (NMOTHERS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

NMOTHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of mothers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NMOTHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable MOMLOC (mother's location in the household).

Number of fathers in household (NFATHERS)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

NFATHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of fathers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NFATHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable POPLOC (father's location in the household).

Country (COUNTRY)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 32-894	

Description

COUNTRY gives the country from which the sample was drawn. The codes assigned to each country are those used by the UN Statistics Division and the ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

Electricity (ELECTRIC)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

ELECTRIC indicates whether the household had access to electricity.

Ownership of dwelling [general version] (OWNERSHIP)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

Ownership of dwelling [detailed version] (OWNERSHIPD)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-999	

Description

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

Cooking fuel (FUELCOOK)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

FUELCOOK indicates the predominant type of fuel or energy used for cooking.

Fuel for heating (FUELHEAT)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

FUELHEAT indicates the main fuel source for heating the household.

Internet access (INTERNET)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

INTERNET indicates whether or not the household had an internet connection.

Computer (COMPUTER)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

COMPUTER indicates whether the household had a personal computer.

Strata identifier (STRATA)
File: ZAF2007-H-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 12
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. The STRATA variable provides information about the sample design that can be used to improve estimation.

Person number (PERNUM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PERNUM numbers all persons within each household consecutively (starting with "1" for the first person record of each household). When combined with SAMPLE and SERIAL, PERNUM uniquely identifies each person in the IPUMS-International database.

Mother's location in household (MOMLOC)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

MOMLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's mother lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the mother (see PERNUM). MOMLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) mothers.

The method by which probable child-mother links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of MOMLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly.

Note: MOMLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepmother and adopted mother) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPMOM is designed to identify some of these social relationships.

Father's location in household (POPLOC)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's father lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the father (see PERNUM). POPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) fathers.

The method by which probable child-father links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of POPLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly.

Note: POPLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepfather and adopted father) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPPOP is designed to identify some of these social relationships.

Spouse's location in household (SPLOC)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's spouse lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number (PERNUM) of the spouse. SPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of (probable) spouses.

The method by which probable spouse-spouse links are identified is described in SPRULE.

The general design of SPLOC and other constructed variables is modeled on the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships", but the details vary significantly.

Rule for linking parent (PARRULE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-52

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PARRULE describes the criteria by which the IPUMS-International variables MOMLOC and POPLOC linked the person to a probable mother and/or father.

IPUMS-International establishes child-parent links according to five basic rules, and PARRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A link to any parent automatically generates a second link to that parent's spouse or partner, so only one rule is needed to describe both MOMLOC and POPLOC.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Rule for linking spouse (SPRULE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

SPRULE explains the criteria by which the IPUMS-International variable SPLOC linked the person to his/her probable spouse.

IPUMS-International establishes spouse-spouse links according to five basic rules, and SPRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A sixth rule identifies sample-specific linking procedures only imposed in selected instances.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Probable stepmother (STEPMOM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-6	

Description

STEPMOM indicates whether a person's mother, as identified by MOMLOC, was most probably not the person's biological mother. Non-zero values of STEPMOM explain why it is probable that the person's mother was a step- or adopted mother. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepmother because (1) the mother identified in MOMLOC was probably the biological mother or (2) there is no mother of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPMOM are as follows:

0 = Biological mother or no mother of this person present in household.
1 = Mother has no children borne or surviving.
2 = Child reports mother is deceased.
3 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner, stepchild/child-in-law).
4 = Mother reports no children in the home.
5 = Age difference between mother and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.
6 = Child exceeds known fertility of mother.

See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepmothers and adopted mothers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPMOM will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

Probable stepfather (STEPPOP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-3	

Description

STEPPOP indicates whether a person's father, as identified by POPLOC , was most probably not the person's biological father. Non-zero values of STEPPOP explain why it is probable that the person's father was a step- or adopted father. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepfather because (1) the father identified in POPLOC was probably the biological father or (2) there is no father of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPPOP are as follows:

0 = Biological father or no father of this person present in household.
1 = Child reports father is deceased.
2 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner; stepchild/child-in-law).
3 = Age difference between father and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.

See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepfathers and adopted fathers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPPOP will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

Man with more than one wife linked (POLYMAL)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POLYMAL indicates if a man had more than one wife linked to him in the constructed IPUMS variable SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household.

The point of POLYMAL is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

Woman is second or higher order wife (POLY2ND)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

POLY2ND indicates if a woman was the second or higher order wife linked to a husband in the constructed IPUMS variable SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household. The variable does not suggest the actual marital order of wives, only their relative positions in the person order of the household as it was enumerated.

The point of POLY2ND is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

Family unit membership (FAMUNIT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FAMUNIT is a constructed variable indicating to which family within the household a person belongs.

All persons related to the household head receive a 1 (see RELATE). Each secondary family or secondary individual receives a higher code. For purposes of FAMUNIT, secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

Number of own family members in household (FAMSIZE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Number of own family members in household (FAMSIZE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

FAMSIZE counts the number of the person's own family members living in the household with her/him, including the person her/himself. These include all persons related to the person by blood, adoption, or marriage as indicated by the census forms or inferred from them.

FAMSIZE is calculated from the units identified in the IPUMS constructed variable FAMUNIT (family unit membebership). The primary family is defined as all persons related to the head in the RELATE variable. Secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

Number of own children in household (NCHILD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NCHILD provides a count of the person's own children living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

Number of own children under age 5 in household (NCHLT5)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

NCHLT5 provides a count of the person's own children under age five living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

Age of eldest own child in household (ELDCH)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Age of eldest own child in household (ELDCH)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

ELDCH gives the age of the person's oldest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

ELDCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

Age of youngest own child in household (YNGCH)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

YNGCH gives the age of the person's youngest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

YNGCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

Relationship to household head [general version] (RELATE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RELATE describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

Relationship to household head [detailed version] (RELATED)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 1000-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

RELATE describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

Age (AGE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-999	

Description

AGE gives age in years as of the person's last birthday prior to or on the day of enumeration.

Age, grouped into intervals (AGE2)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-98	

Description

AGE2 gives computed years of age grouped into intervals.

Sex (SEX)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

SEX reports the sex (gender) of the respondent.

Marital status [general version] (MARST)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

[program universe for et,mz samples.

MARST describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

Marital status [detailed version] (MARSTD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-999	

Description

[program universe for et,mz samples.

MARST describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

Consensual union (CONSENS)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

CONSENS indicates whether the respondent was in a consensual union -- a de facto marriage.

Polygamous union (POLYGAM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

POLYGAM indicates whether the respondent was in a polygamous union and, in some samples, the number of wives or the rank order of the wife.

Children ever born (CHBORN)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

Children ever born (CHBORN)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

CHBORN reports the number of children ever born to each woman of whom the question was asked. In most samples, women were to report all live births by all fathers, whether or not the child was still living.

Children surviving (CHSURV)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

CHSURV reports the number of children born to a woman who were still living at the time of the census.

Number of female children ever born (CHBORNF)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

CHBORNF indicates the number of female children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

Number of male children ever born (CHBORNM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

CHBORNM indicates the number of male children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

Number of children dead (CHDEAD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

Number of children dead (CHDEAD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

CHDEAD reports how many of the children ever born to a woman were no longer living at the time of the census. Women were to consider all live births by all fathers; they were to exclude still births.

Mortality status of mother (MORTMOT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	
Description	

MORTMOT indicates whether the person's biological mother was still living at the time of the census.

Mortality status of father (MORTFAT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	
Description	

MORTFAT indicates whether the person's biological father was still living.

Number of own female children in household (HOMEFEM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

HOMEFEM indicates the number of female children born living in the household with their mother (the respondent).

Number of own female children living elsewhere (AWAYFEM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	
Description	

Number of own female children living elsewhere (AWAYFEM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

AWAYFEM indicates the number of surviving biological female children not living in the household with their mother (the respondent).

Province of birth, South Africa (BPLZA)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

BPLZA indicates the province in South Africa in which the person was born.

Race or color (RACE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 10-99	

Description

Race identifies the racial group with which a person identified himself or herself, or to which an enumerator assigned them. Determinations of race are based largely on appearance or ancestral place of origin.

School attendance (SCHOOL)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

SCHOOL indicates whether or not the person attended school at the time of the census or within some specified period of time prior to the census.

Educational attainment, South Africa (EDUCZA)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Educational attainment, South Africa (EDUCZA)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EDUCZA indicates the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed and the number of years completed at that level.

Activity status (employment status) [general version] (EMPSTAT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

Activity status (employment status) [detailed version] (EMPSTATD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

Occupation, ISCO general (OCCISCO)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Occupation, ISCO general (OCCISCO)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

OCCISCO records the person's primary occupation, coded according to the major categories in the International Standard Classification of Occupations (ISCO) scheme for 1988. For someone with more than one job, the primary occupation is typically the one in which the person had spent the most time or earned the most money.

Occupation, unrecoded (OCC)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

OCC records the person's primary occupation, classified according to the system used by the respective national census office at the time. For someone with more than one job, the primary occupation is usually the one in which the person spent the most time or earned the most money, although this may not have been explicit in the instructions for a specific census.

To ensure confidentiality, very small occupations are recoded to a residual category indicating the persons had an occupation, but the job title is not identified. The number of cases recoded should be too small to affect analyses.

Industry, general recode (INDGEN)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

INDGEN recodes the industrial classifications of the various samples into twelve groups that can be fairly consistently identified across all available samples. The groupings roughly conform to the International Standard Industrial Classification (ISIC). The third digit of INDGEN retains important detail among the service industries that could not be consistently distinguished in all samples.

"Industry" refers to the activity or product of the establishment or sector in which a person worked.

Industry, unrecoded (IND)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 5
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Industry, unrecoded (IND)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

"Industry" refers to the activity or product of the establishment or sector in which the person worked. IND is classified according to the system used by the respective national census office at the time, and is not recoded by IPUMS-International.

Status in employment (class of worker) [general version] (CLASSWK)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CLASSWK refers to the status of an economically active person with respect to his or her employment -- that is, the type of explicit or implicit contract of employment with other persons or organizations that the person has in his/her job. In general, the variable indicates whether a person was self-employed, or worked for someone else, either for pay or as an unpaid family worker. CLASSWK is related to EMPSTAT, which is used to define the universe in many samples.

Class of worker is often referred to as "status in employment" in other sources.

Status in employment (class of worker) [detailed version] (CLASSWKD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

CLASSWK refers to the status of an economically active person with respect to his or her employment -- that is, the type of explicit or implicit contract of employment with other persons or organizations that the person has in his/her job. In general, the variable indicates whether a person was self-employed, or worked for someone else, either for pay or as an unpaid family worker. CLASSWK is related to EMPSTAT, which is used to define the universe in many samples.

Class of worker is often referred to as "status in employment" in other sources.

Total income (INCTOT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 7
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Total income (INCTOT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

INCTOT reports the person's total personal income from all sources in the previous month or year.

Province of previous residence, South Africa (MIGZA1)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-99	

Description

MIGZA1 indicates the person's province of previous residence.

Employment disability (DISEMP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

DISEMP indicates if the respondent was economically inactive because of disabilities.

Blind or vision-impaired (DISBLND)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

DISBLND indicates whether the person was blind or had limited vision.

Deaf or hearing-impaired (DISDEAF)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

Deaf or hearing-impaired (DISDEAF)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

DISDEAF indicates whether the person was deaf or had limited hearing.

Mute or speech impaired (DISMUTE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

DISMUTE indicates if the person could not speak or had a significant speech impediment.

Mental disability (DISMNTL)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

DISMNTL indicates whether the person suffered a mental disability in the form of diminished capacity.

Psychological disability (DISPSYC)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

DISPSYC indicates whether the person was disabled due to mental illness.

Year of birth (BIRTHYR)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 4	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9999	

Description

Year of birth (BIRTHYR)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

BIRTHYR gives the person's year of birth.

Residence status: de facto, de jure (RESIDENT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

RESIDENT identifies whether an enumerated person is a household resident or a visitor and whether she or he was present at the time of enumeration. This variable is available only in samples that enumerated both de facto and de jure residents. It can be used to eliminate the double-counting of persons who were enumerated both at their permanent residence and at the residence they were visiting on census night.

De jure population: present residents and absent residents.

De facto population: present residents and visitors/non-residents.

Occupation, ISCO-1988, 3-digit (ISCO88A)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 10-999	

Description

ISCO88A provides the 3-digit occupation code for the respondent using the ISCO-1988 occupation classification.

Person number (within household) (ZA2007A_0003)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-32	

Description

This variable indicates the person number (within household).

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Person number (within household)

Number of persons in household (ZA2007A_0006)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-32

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the number of persons in the household.

Universe

All households

Literal question

Number of persons in household

Person number (ZA2007A_0400)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-32

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number (within the household).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Person number (ZA2007A_0400)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-01 Person number

_ _

F-01 First name and surname

Write down the name and surname of each member in the appropriate column.
Start with the usual members (starting with the head) who were present last night, followed by those members who were absent last night, and lastly by those who stayed in the household last night as visitors.
Always start with the head or acting head of household i.e. person no. 01. The head or acting head is the person who is the main decision-maker in the household. If two or more people are equal decision-makers, take the oldest person first. Write sideways.

_____

F-02 Age

Do not ask the question. Write the age in block provided based on answer from P-03

_ _ _

F-03 Sex

Do not ask the question. Mark the appropriate box with an X based on answer from P-04
[] 1 Male
[] 2 Female

F-04 Respondent

For each person in the household, indicate the number of the person who provided or responded to most questions applicable to that person. Enter person no. in the box.

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-01) Person number
Assign a person number to each person starting from 01.

For households with up to ten people, you use one questionnaire. Fill in "0" before the pre-printed number so the first person gets the number 01, the second 02, etc. If you use the last column, fill in "1" before the zero to make number "10". Make sure you always write inside the box, not next to it or outside of it.

If there are more than 10 people in the household, you use a second questionnaire for the same household. Fill in "1" before the pre-printed number. Thus the first person on this questionnaire (or 11th person in the household) gets the serial number 11, the second 12, etc. If you use the last column, fill in "2" to make "20". If a third questionnaire is required (in rare cases where there are more than 20 people in a household), the serial numbers will be 21, 22, 23, etc., up to 30.

Month of birth (ZA2007A_0403)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's month of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Month of birth (ZA2007A_0403)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-02 Date of birth
What is (the person)'s date of birth?

Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY
DD is for day; MM is for month and YYYY is for year.
For any information that is not known, leave the box blank.
[Example omitted]
Day of birth: _ _
Month of birth: _ _
Year of birth: _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-02) Date of birth: What is (the person's) date of birth?
The date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2 digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY, e.g., if the person was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for day, 01 for month and 1970 for year.

Get as much information as is known, i.e.:

If the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.
For any information that is not known, leave the box blank.

Year of birth (ZA2007A_0404)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2007

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's year of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-02 Date of birth
What is (the person)'s date of birth?

Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY
DD is for day; MM is for month and YYYY is for year.
For any information that is not known, leave the box blank.
[Example omitted]
Day of birth: _ _
Month of birth: _ _
Year of birth: _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-02) Date of birth: What is (the person's) date of birth?
The date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2 digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY, e.g., if the person was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for day, 01 for month and 1970 for year.

Get as much information as is known, i.e.:

If the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.
For any information that is not known, leave the box blank.

Age (ZA2007A_0405)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-120

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's age.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-03 Age
What is (the person)'s age in completed years?

If age not known ask for an estimate of age. If no one is able to estimate, write 998.
For babies less than 1 year write 000 for age. For a person 7 years and 10 months write 007 for age.
Age (in years): _ _ _ _
Transcribe the answer to F-02 on the flap

Interviewer instructions

(P-03) Age: What is (the person's) age in completed years?
Ask the age for each person.

Note that the age must be given in completed years, i.e. age at last birthday.

For babies younger than one year, write 000 for age and for person 7 years and 10 months old write 007 for age.

If the age is not known at all, ask for an estimate. If no one in the household is able to estimate the age, write in 998.
Please note an answer for each person must always be provided in the boxes for this question.

Remember to transcribe the age (or 998) given to F-02 to the flap for each person in the household.

Sex (ZA2007A_0406)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's sex.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-04 Sex
Is (the person) male or female?

Mark the appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Male
[] 2 Female
Transcribe the answer to F-03 on the flap.

Interviewer instructions

Sex (ZA2007A_0406)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

(P-04) Sex: Is (the person) male or female?
This information can be obtained most of the time through observation. Only ask if there is doubt or in cases where the relevant person is not present during the interview.

Do not use the name of a person to decide whether the person is male or female.

Mark the correct box with an X, 1 if male, 2 if female.

Remember to transcribe the sex of each person to the flap in F-03.

Usually stay in this house four nights a week (ZA2007A_0407)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person usually stays in the place of enumeration four nights a week.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-05 Usually stay
Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week and has done so over the last four weeks?

Mark the appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(P-05) Usually stay: Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week, including over the last 4 weeks?

Mark the appropriate box with an X.

Stayed in this house last night (ZA2007A_0408)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person stayed in this house the night previous to the enumeration.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Stayed in this house last night (ZA2007A_0408)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-06 Last night stay
Did (the person) stay in this household last night?

Mark the appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(P-06) Last night stay: Did (the person) stay in this household last night?
Mark the appropriate box with an X.

Relationship (ZA2007A_0409)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-14	

Description

This variable indicates the person's relationship to the household head.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-07 Relationship
What is (the person)'s relationship to the head or acting head of the household?

The head or acting head is the person listed in column 1 of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household.
[] 01 Head/acting head
[] 02 Husband/wife/partner
[] 03 Son/daughter
[] 04 Adopted son/daughter
[] 05 Stepchild
[] 06 Brother/sister
[] 07 Parent (mother/father)
[] 08 Parent-in-law
[] 09 Grand/great grandchild
[] 10 Son/daughter-in-law
[] 11 Brother/sister-in-law
[] 12 Grandmother/father
[] 13 Other relative
[] 14 Non-related person

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-07) Relationship: What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household?

The head or acting head of household referred to is the person identified in the first column of the questionnaire.

In Column 01 (for the head or acting head him/herself), you automatically put 01 for relationship. If you are interviewing a single-person household you also do not need to ask the question, simply mark category 01.

Then determine the relationship of each person listed in P-01 to the head of household in (person number column 01). Write the appropriate code in the box provided. There should be no questionnaires without a head of household.

A "Partner" of the head of the household belongs to the same category as "husband/wife" - category 02. Partners are two people who live together in the same household like a married couple even if they are not married to each other.

Marital status (ZA2007A_0410)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-8

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's marital status.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-08 Marital status
What is (the person)'s present marital status?

Write only one code per person.
If both civil/religious and traditional indicate civil/religious.
[] 1 Married civil/religious
[] 2 Married traditional/customary
[] 3 Polygamous marriage
[] 4 Living together as married partners
[] 5 Never married
[] 6 Widower/widow
[] 7 Separated
[] 8 Divorced
If 5 to 8, Go to P-10

_

Interviewer instructions

(P-08) Marital status: What is (the person's) present marital status?
Read out the options to the respondent.

Mark only the present marital status. We do not need a person's marital history.

Any couple living together as married persons without a civil/religious or traditional/ customary marriage should be coded as 'living together (like married partners)' (code 4).

Mark code 5 (never married) for unmarried children in the household, and not code 4 (living together).

For a man with more than one wife, indicate "polygamous" rather than civil or customary marriage. For the wives, indicate category 1 or 2 (married civil/religious or traditional/customary).

If a person is not in a marital union or living together as married partners (i.e., codes 5 to 8), Go to P-10

Spouse person number (ZA2007A_0411)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-98

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number of the person's spouse.

Universe

Married persons who are not residing in institutions

Literal question

Spouse person number (ZA2007A_0411)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-09 Spouse
Who, in this household, is (the person)'s spouse or partner?

[Question P-09 was asked of persons who are currently married, per question P-08.]
Write the person no. of the spouse or partner in the appropriate box. If the spouse does not reside in the household, write 98.

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-09) Spouse: Who, in this household, is (the person's) spouse or partner?
Ask only of those who are married (Civil/religious, traditional/customary, polygamous) or living together as married partners (code 1 to 4, P-08).

[p.47]

Write the person number of the spouse or partner. If a man has more than one wife, the person number of the first wife should be recorded. The person number of the husband should be recorded for each wife.

Write 99 if the spouse does not usually reside in the household 4 nights a week including the last 4 weeks.

If a person is married or living together (codes 1 to 4) and is the only occupant of the household, write 99 as the spouse does not usually reside in the household 4 nights a week including the last 4 weeks.

Race/ethnicity (ZA2007A_0412)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-4	

Description

This variable indicates the person's race/ethnicity.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

P-10 Population group
How would (the person) describe himself/herself in terms of population group?

Write code in the box.
[] 1 Black
[] 2 Coloured
[] 3 Indian or Asian
[] 4 White

_

Interviewer instructions

(P-10) Population group: How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group?
Ask for everybody even if the population group seems obvious.

Remember that persons of different population groups do sometimes form part of the same household, so you cannot assume the population group of any household member.

Accept the response that is given even if you do not agree and under no circumstances may the response be queried.

Province of birth (ZA2007A_0413)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's province of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-11 Province of birth
In which province in South Africa was (the person) born?

Write code in the box. If the person was not born in South Africa, the code is 10.
[] 01 Western Cape
[] 02 Eastern Cape
[] 03 Northern Cape
[] 04 Free State
[] 05 KwaZulu-Natal
[] 06 North West
[] 07 Gauteng
[] 08 Mpumalanga
[] 09 Limpopo
[] 10 Outside RSA
[] 11 Do not know

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-11) Province of birth: In which Province in South Africa was (the person) born?
Write the appropriate code in the box provided. If the person was not born in South Africa, the code is 10.

Person lived in this dwelling in October 2001 (ZA2007A_0418)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-3

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person lived in this dwelling in October 2001.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-16 Five years ago
Was (the person) living in this dwelling in October 2001?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
If 1 "Yes" or 3 "Born after October 2001", Go to P-21.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Born after October 2001

Interviewer instructions

Person lived in this dwelling in October 2001 (ZA2007A_0418)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

(P-16) Five years ago: Was (the person) living in this dwelling in October 2001?
Note should be taken that this question refers to any movement, no matter how close the original place is to the new one, including a move from one dwelling unit to another on the same stand or in the same block of flats.

Option 3 would only be marked if the child was born after October 2001.
Please note the skip instruction, if the answer is "No, code 2", continue to P-17 but if either of the other options is selected (Yes, code 1, or Born after October 2001, code 3), Go to P-21.

If the person has moved more than once in the last 5 years, give the details of the last move only.

Month the person moved to this place (ZA2007A_0419)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the month in which the person moved to the current residence.

Universe

Persons who were not residing in institutions and did not live in the same dwelling 5 years ago

Literal question

P-17 Period of movement
In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling?

[Question P-17 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16].
[Example omitted]
Month _ _
Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-17) Period of movement: In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling?
This question is only asked of those people who have moved within the last 5 years (code 2, P-16).

Note that the period should not be before October 2001. Write 2 digits for the month in the boxes and 4 digits for the year in the boxes. If the month is not known, leave blank.

Year the person moved to this place (ZA2007A_0420)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 4
Decimals: 0
Range: 2001-9999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the year the person moved to the current residence.

Universe

Persons who were not residing in institutions and did not live in the same dwelling 5 years ago

Literal question

Year the person moved to this place (ZA2007A_0420)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-17 Period of movement
In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling?

[Question P-17 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16].
[Example omitted]
Month _ _
Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-17) Period of movement: In which year and month did (the person) move to this dwelling?
This question is only asked of those people who have moved within the last 5 years (code 2, P-16).

Note that the period should not be before October 2001. Write 2 digits for the month in the boxes and 4 digits for the year in the boxes. If the month is not known, leave blank.

Province of previous residence (ZA2007A_0421)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the province of previous residence.

Universe

Persons who did not live in the same dwelling 5 years ago and were not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-18 Province of previous residence
In which province did (the person) live before moving to this dwelling?

[Question P-18 was asked of persons who were born before October 2001and not living in the current dwelling in October 2001, per question P-16].
Write code in the box. If the person moved from outside South Africa, write code 10.
[] 01 Western Cape
[] 02 Eastern Cape
[] 03 Northern Cape
[] 04 Free State
[] 05 KwaZulu-Natal
[] 06 North West
[] 07 Gauteng
[] 08 Mpumalanga
[] 09 Limpopo
[] 10 Outside RSA
[] 11 Do not know

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-18) Province of previous residence: In which province did (the person) live before moving to this dwelling?
If the person was not living in the province, indicate which province they moved from. If the person moved within the same province, fill in the code of the same province.

If the move was within South Africa, then province code should be filled in, but if the move was from another country, then the "Outside RSA" (code 10) should be filled in. Only one answer is allowed.

Any disability (ZA2007A_0424)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person suffers from any disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-21 Disability
Does (the person) have any kind of disability?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-24.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

(P-21) Disability: Does (the person) have any kinds of disability?
Ask whether the person has a disability.
Explain to the respondent that the definition of a disability includes a serious sight, hearing, physical, communication, intellectual, emotional or mental disability that has lasted for 6 months or more. Mark the appropriate box.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know" code 3, Go to P-24.

Disability: sight (ZA2007A_0425)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person has a sight related disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

Disability: sight (ZA2007A_0425)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability: hearing (ZA2007A_0426)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person has a hearing related disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability: communication (ZA2007A_0427)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has a communication disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Disability: communication (ZA2007A_0427)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability: physical (ZA2007A_0428)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person has a physical disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability: intellectual (ZA2007A_0429)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Disability: intellectual (ZA2007A_0429)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has an intellectual disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability: emotional (ZA2007A_0430)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has an emotional disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

Disability: emotional (ZA2007A_0430)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Disability prevents from life activities (ZA2007A_0431)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person's disability prevents them from engaging in life activities.

Universe

Persons who have a disability

Literal question

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

P-23 Disability intensity
Does the disability seriously prevent (the person) from full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life, etc.)?

[Question P-23 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

(P-23) Disability intensity: Does the disability seriously prevent (the person) from full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. The disability should be serious in such a way that it prevents the person from full participation in life activities.

Receive government/welfare grant (ZA2007A_0432)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person receives a governmental/welfare grant.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-24 Social grant
Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-26.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

Social grant - old age pension (ZA2007A_0433)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant in the form of an old age pension.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Social grant - old age pension (ZA2007A_0433)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - disability grant (ZA2007A_0434)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant for disability (disability grant).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Social grant - disability grant (ZA2007A_0434)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - child support grant (ZA2007A_0435)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Social grant - child support grant (ZA2007A_0435)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant for child support (child support grant).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - care dependency grant (ZA2007A_0436)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Social grant - care dependency grant (ZA2007A_0436)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant for care of disabled children (care dependency grant).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant - care dependency grant (ZA2007A_0436)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - foster care grant (ZA2007A_0437)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant for providing foster care to children from orphanages (foster care grant).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Social grant - foster care grant (ZA2007A_0437)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - grant in aid (ZA2007A_0438)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Social grant - grant in aid (ZA2007A_0438)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a grant for people who receive other grants and are unable to care for themselves or have someone looking after them on a full time basis (grant in aid).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Social grant - social relief (ZA2007A_0439)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person receives a social grant for people who cannot meet basic needs (social relief).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Social grant - social relief (ZA2007A_0439)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

School Attendance (ZA2007A_0440)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person attends an educational institution.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

School Attendance (ZA2007A_0440)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-26 School attendance
Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution?

Read out: Attendance includes all part-time and full-time studies, whether in person or as a distance learner, as well as home schooling.
Mark appropriate box with an X.
If 2 "No" Go to P-29.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

(P-26) School attendance: Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution?
Read out: Attendance includes all part-time and full-time studies, whether in person or as a distance learner, as well as home schooling.

If the person does not 'attend' any educational institution, i.e. No, code 2, Go to P-29.

Educational institution (ZA2007A_0441)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of educational institution the person attends.

Universe

Persons attending school who are not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-27 Educational institution
Which of the following educational institutions does (the person) attend?

[Question P-27 was asked of persons who presently attend an educational institution, per question P-26.]
Write code in the box.
Read out:
[] 1 Pre-school
[] 2 Primary school
[] 3 Secondary school
[] 4 College
[] 5 University/university of technology/Technikon
[] 6 Adult Basic Education and Training
[] 7 Other

_

Interviewer instructions

(P-27) Educational institution: Which of the following educational institution does (the person) attend?
[Asked of people who answered "yes" to Question P 26 (Does the person presently attend an educational institution?]

Children attending any pre-school, crche, nursery school, day school, etc., must be recorded as (Option 1).

Option 6 refers to formal ABET (Adult Basic Education and Training) classes.

Option 7, Other, includes adult classes, for example, practical skills, that are less formal, e.g., at churches. Home schooling is also included here.

Private/public school (ZA2007A_0442)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person attends a private or public school.

Universe

Persons attending school who are not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-28 Public or independent institution
Is the institution (the person) attends public (government) or independent (private)?

[Question P-28 was asked of persons who presently attend an educational institution, per question P-26.]
Write code in the box.
[] 1 Public
[] 2 Independent
[] 3 Do not know

_

Interviewer instructions

(P-28) Public or independent institution: Is the institution (the person) attends public (government) or independent (private)?
[Asked of people who answered "yes" to Question P 26 (Does the person presently attend an educational institution?)]
Note that a public school means a government school, including former model C schools, even if they are fee-paying, i.e. a school directly under the provincial Department of Education. An independent (private) school refers to all non-government schools.

Highest level of education (ZA2007A_0443)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the highest level of education the person has completed.

Universe

Persons aged 5+ who are not residing in institutions

Literal question

Highest level of education (ZA2007A_0443)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

P-29 Level of education
What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed?

For a person with grade 12, probe whether he/she has a university exemption or not.
For a person with a certificate or a diploma, probe whether he/she has grade 12 (std 10) or not.
Write code in the box.
[] 00 Grade 0
[] 01 Grade 1
[] 02 Grade 2
[] 03 Grade 3/ Std 1/ ABET 1
[] 04 Grade 4/ Std 2
[] 05 Grade 5/ Std 3/ ABET 2
[] 06 Grade 6/ Std 4
[] 07 Grade 7/ Std 5/ ABET 3
[] 08 Grade 8/ Std 6
[] 09 Grade 9/ Std 7/ ABET 4
[] 10 Grade 10/Std 8/ NTCI
[] 11 Grade 11/ Std 9/ NTCII
[] 12 Attended Grade 12, but not completed Grade 12
[] 13 Grade 12 / Std 10/ NTCIII (without university exemption)
[] 14 Grade 12/ Std 10 (with university exemption)
[] 15 Certificate with [less than] Std 10/Gr.12
[] 16 Diploma with [less than] Std 10/Gr.12
[] 17 Certificate with Std 10/Gr.12
[] 18 Diploma with Std 10 /Gr.12
[] 19 Bachelors degree
[] 20 BTech
[] 21 Post graduate diploma
[] 22 Honours degree
[] 23 Higher degree (Masters/PhD)
[] 24 No schooling
[] 98 Out of scope (children under five
years of age)
– –

Interviewer instructions

(P-29) Level of education: What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed?
We are interested in the highest level of education that the person has completed, not the level they are currently studying. Thus a pupil at school who is in Grade 9 has completed Grade 8.

If grade 11 is mentioned, probe whether he/she has attended grade 12 but not completed it.

NTC 1 stands for the National Technical Certificate on first year level.
If grade 12 is mentioned, probe whether he/she has a university exemption or not and code accordingly.

If a certificate or diploma, probe whether he/she has a grade 12 or not.

NB: If the person is less than 5 years of age, write code 98

If the person is 5 years or older and had no schooling, write code 24.

Run or do any kind of business, big or small (ZA2007A_0444)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

Run or do any kind of business, big or small (ZA2007A_0444)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

This variable indicates whether the person has run or done any kind of business, big or small, in the seven days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30a In the last 7 days, did (the person) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for himself/herself or with one or more partners even for only one hour?

Examples: Selling things, making things for sale, repairing things, guarding cars, brewing beer, hairdressing, creche business, taxi or other transport business, having a legal or medical practice, etc.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30a) In the last 7 days, did (the person) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for himself / herself or with one or more partners even for only one hour?
Stress the reference period of the last 7 days. Note that it includes any activity up to the day before the interview.

Also note the phrase, "even for only one hour". It must be clear that the time frame is per category and not in conjunction with other activities. Thus, for each category, a person should be engaged for at least one hour in the last seven days to answer "Yes" to that category. You must go through each part of the question slowly and thoroughly, reading out examples and ensuring the respondent understands each part before answering "Yes"," No" or "Do not know".

[p.52]

Note: An answer is required and must be recorded for each question "Yes", "No" or "Do not know" should be recorded for each activity.

Worked for a wage, salary, commission or payment in-kind (ZA2007A_0445)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

Worked for a wage, salary, commission or payment in-kind (ZA2007A_0445)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

This variable indicates whether the person worked for a wage, salary, commission or payment in-kind during the seven days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30b In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work for a wage, salary, commission or payment in kind (excluding domestic worker) even for only one hour?

Examples: a regular job, contract, casual or piece work for pay, work in exchange for food or housing.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30b): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work for a wage, salary, commission or payment in kind (excluding domestic work) even for only one hour?
This includes all types of paid employment, even for one hour, in the last seven days, paid either in cash or in kind, for example, with food, clothing or accommodation. Probe particularly for: casual work, piece jobs and part-time work.

Note: Exclude domestic work - this should be recorded only under P-30c.

Worked as domestic worker for a wage, salary, or payment in-kind (ZA2007A_0446)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person worked as domestic worker for a wage, salary, or payment in-kind during the seven days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Worked as domestic worker for a wage, salary, or payment in-kind (ZA2007A_0446)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30c In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work as a domestic worker for a wage, salary or payment in kind even for only one hour?

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30c): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work as a domestic worker for a wage, salary or payment in kind even for only an hour?
It is important to note that this question refers to domestic work that a person does as an employee of a particular household and is receiving some sort of remuneration for doing it. Household gardeners also come under this category. They are different from gardeners employed by institutions or organisations.

It excludes the normal housework that is done by members of the household for no pay at all.

Helped without pay in a household business (ZA2007A_0447)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person helped without pay in a household business of any kind during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Helped without pay in a household business (ZA2007A_0447)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30d In the last 7 days, did (the person) help unpaid in a household business of any kind even for only one hour?
Examples: Help to sell things, make things for sale or exchange, doing the accounts, cleaning up for the business, etc. Do not count normal housework

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30d): In the last 7 days, did (the person) help unpaid in a household business of any kind even for only one hour?
This is a common activity, especially for young people in some areas, and must be probed for. It is often missed in surveys. Make it very clear that a household business does not mean helping out with the housework at home.

Worked on household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal (ZA2007A_0448)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete   Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric   Invalid: 0
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Description

This variable indicates whether the person worked on his/her own or the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or helped in growing farm produce or in looking after animals during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Worked on household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal (ZA2007A_0448)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30e In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work on his/her own or the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or help in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household even for only one hour?

Examples: Ploughing, harvesting, looking after livestock.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30e): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work on his/her own on the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or help in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household even for only one hour?
In areas where agriculture or grazing is possible, this activity is common in certain seasons and must be probed for.

These activities are also commonly missed in surveys. It is expected that many young persons in the old homeland areas will do these activities, particularly during the school holidays.

Helped with construction/repair of own home, plot, cattle post or business (ZA2007A_0449)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person helped with construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business during the seven days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Helped with construction/repair of own home, plot, cattle post or business (ZA2007A_0449)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30f In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business even for only one hour?

[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30f): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business even for only one hour?
This question differs from P-30e in that it only refers to construction and major repair work while P-30e refers to farming activities.

Caught fish, wild animals or other food for sale or household consumption (ZA2007A_0450)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person caught fish, prawns, shells, wild animals or other food for sale or household consumption during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+

Literal question

Caught fish, wild animals or other food for sale or household consumption (ZA2007A_0450)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-30g In the last 7 days, did (the person) catch any fish, prawns, shell fish, wild animals either as food for sale or for household use, even for only one hour?

If 1 "Yes" to any of P-30a to P-30g, Go to P-36.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30g): In the last 7 days, did (the person) catch any fish, prawns, shellfish, wild animals, either as food for sale or for household use, even for only one hour?
Mark a "Yes", "No" or "Don't know" for each person.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

Have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity to return to (ZA2007A_0451)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person had a job, business, or other economic or farming activity to return to if they had not worked during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+ who have not worked at least one hour in the last 7 days

Have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity to return to (ZA2007A_0451)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-31 Temporary absence from work
Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?

[Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence.
If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-31): Temporary absence from work: Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?
This question is only to be asked of those persons who have not been engaged in any activities in the last 7 days, i.e. No to all of P-30a to P-30g.

The most common group is people on leave, e.g. annual leave, sick leave, maternity leave or any other leave. They did not work in the last 7 days, but they have a job to go back to and should be recorded as active in their usual job.

Note that if a person is not working because of the off-season in agriculture or other seasonal industries, he/she is not to be regarded as temporarily absent. He/she is regarded as unemployed or not economically active until the next season begins.

If the answer is "No", continue with P-32.

If the answer is "Yes", Go to P-36.

Reason not working (ZA2007A_0452)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Reason not working (ZA2007A_0452)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's reason for not working.

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have not worked in the last 7 days and who do not have a job they will return to

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-32 Reasons for not working
Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?

[Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future
[] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work
[] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work
[] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work
[] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped)
[] 06 Too young or too old to work
[] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer
[] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs
[] 09 Cannot find work
[] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory)
[] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract
[] 12 Retrenched
[] 13 Other reason
Write code in the box.
− −

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-32) Reasons for not working: Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?
This question must only be answered for the person who answered "No" to all the questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.

Do not read out the categories; let the person give the reason without being influenced by the categories. Mark only one reason.

If the person has found a job and has a definite starting date (Code 01), do not ask P-33 to P-39 - Go to P-40.

Availability for work (ZA2007A_0453)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates how soon the person could start working if a suitable job were offered.

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have not worked in the last 7 days and who do not have a job they will return to

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-33 Availability for work
If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?

[Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 1 Within a week
[] 2 Within two weeks
[] 3 Within four weeks
[] 4 More than four weeks from now
[] 5 Not interested
[] 6 Not able (health or disability)
[] 7 Do not know
Write code in the box.

_

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-33) Availability for work: If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?
This question should only be asked of persons who answered "No" in P-31.

Looked for work (ZA2007A_0454)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Looked for work (ZA2007A_0454)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether persons who were not working had looked for work during the four weeks prior to the enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+ who are available for work

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-34 Active steps seeking work
During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work?

[Question P-34 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-34) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work?
The person, who went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for work should answer "Yes".

Start any kind of business (ZA2007A_0455)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Start any kind of business (ZA2007A_0455)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

This variable indicates whether the person who was not working had taken action to start any kind of business during the four weeks prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons age 15+ who are available for work

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-35 Active steps seeking work
During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business?

[Question P-35 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
If P-34 and P-35 completed Go to P-40
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-35) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business?
The person who went looking for land or a building or equipment to start their own business or farm should answer, "Yes".

Work status (ZA2007A_0456)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's main activity or work status.

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have worked in the last 7 days or who have regular work to which they will return and who do not live in institutions

Work status (ZA2007A_0456)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-36 Work status
How can one describe (the person)'s main activity or work status best?

If yes to any of P-30a to P-30g or P-31 [who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to.]
Write code in the box.
Read out :
[] 1 Paid employee
[] 2 Paid family worker
[] 3 Self-employed
[] 4 Employer
[] 5 Unpaid family worker

_

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

Questions p-36 to p-38 are to be answered by those who responded "yes" in any of p-30a to P-30G or P-31.

(P-36) Work status: How can one describe (the person's) main activity or work status best?
Read out the list of options. Write code in the box.

If the person has two occupations, ask for the occupation worked most at.

1 = Paid employee - this means a person who works for someone else or for a company/organisation for a wage or salary, or for commissions from sales or bonuses, or payment in kind such as food, housing or training.
2 = Paid family worker - for example, those family members who work in family businesses or on family farms and receive a normal salary or wage.
3 = Self-employed - this means a person who has his or her own business or enterprise but does not employ other persons on a full-time basis.
4 = Employer - this means a person who works for him/herself and employs others in his business.
5 = Unpaid family worker - this means someone who works in a family business or on a family farm without receiving any monetary payment.

Work sector (ZA2007A_0457)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person works in the formal or informal sector.

Work sector (ZA2007A_0457)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have worked in the last 7 days or who have regular work to which they will return and who do not live in institutions

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-37 Business type
Is the organisation/ company / business /enterprise/branch where (the person) works in the formal or informal sector?

[Question P-37 was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.]
Formal sector employment is where the employer (institution, business) is registered (i.e. has a tax number) and informal is when it is not registered.
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 In the formal sector
[] 2 In the informal sector (including domestic work)
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

Questions p-36 to p-38 are to be answered by those who responded "yes" in any of p-30a to P-30G or P-31.

(P-37): Business type: Is the organisation / company / business / enterprise / branch where (the person) works in the formal or informal sector?
Here we want the respondent to state his/her opinion as to whether he/she works in the formal or informal sector.

Formal sector employment is where the employer (institution, business or private individual) is registered (i.e. the business has a tax number) to perform the activity.

Informal sector employment is where the employer is not registered to perform the activity.

Occupation, 3 digits (ZA2007A_0588)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 11-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's 3 digit occupation.

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have worked in the last 7 days or who have regular work to which they will return and who do not live in institutions

Literal question

Occupation, 3 digits (ZA2007A_0588)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-38 Occupation
What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?

[Question P-38 was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.]
For example: street vendor, primary school teacher, domestic worker etc.
Write in capital letters.

___

Interviewer instructions

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

Questions p-36 to p-38 are to be answered by those who responded "yes" in any of p-30a to P-30G or P-31.

(P-38) Occupation: What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?
Occupation refers to the main type of work in which the person is engaged.

To give an accurate occupation to what a person does in his/her occupation, we need a very good description. Probe for full details: If the respondent answers "a clerk", probe for what type of clerk (see first example below).

The answer that clearly describes the main occupation should be written and the two or more words should generally be given to describe the occupation.

[p.55]

The following are inadequate and thorough examples of answers to this question:

Inadequate answers / Thorough answers
a. Clerk / Accounts clerk
b. Office work / Compiles monthly accounts

a. Labourer / Construction labourer
b. Labouring / Carries bricks

a. Teacher / Primary school teacher
b. Education / Teaching primary school children

a. Manager / Hotel manager
b. Managing / Control staff, food, etc. in hotel

In particular, give a good description of the main duties of farm workers e.g. tilling soil, driving tractors, picking fruit, packing fruit, etc.

Industry, 3 digit (ZA2007A_0589)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Industry, 3 digit (ZA2007A_0589)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-999

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the 3 digit version of the main business/function of the company where the person works (the person's industry).

Universe

Persons age 15 to 74 who have worked in the last 7 days or who have regular work to which they will return and who do not live in institutions

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-39 Industry

P-39a What is the name of (the person)'s place of work or company.

[Question P-39a was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.]
_____

P-39b What is the main business/function of the company that (the person) works (main economic activity) for?

[Question P-39b was asked of persons who were either working during the last seven days or had work that the persons could definitely return to, person questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.]
For example: gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking, or subsistence farming if self-employed.
Write the main industry, main economic activity, product, goods or service in capital letters.
_____

Interviewer instructions

Industry, 3 digit (ZA2007A_0589)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

Questions p-36 to p-38 are to be answered by those who responded "yes" in any of p-30a to P-30G or P-31.

(P-39) Industry

(P-39a) What is the name of (the person's) place of work or company?
It is essential that the correct full name of the place of work or company is given.

Following are some thorough and inadequate examples of descriptions:

Inadequate answers / Thorough answers
a. Dept Education / Rapele14 Primary school
b. Vaal Reef / Vaal Reef Gold Mining
c. Breweries / SA Breweries
d. Private individual / T and T Construction
e. P and G / PandG Farming
f. Bradlows / Bradlows furniture

(P-39b) What is the main business/function of the company that (the person) works/ (main economic activity) for?
The objective is to be able to give an industry to the person's place of work.

Occupation (P-38) is what a person does. Industry is what a business or other establishment does.

The questions are now directed at where the person works and not at what he/she does him/herself. For example, if a person is an accountant for a gold mining company we record gold mining company and not accountancy.

Ensure that you receive a good description so that a correct industry can be given. The description should be in English as the code lists will be in English only.

A description of the major crop or livestock should be given for commercial farms.

Following are some thorough and inadequate examples of descriptions.
Inadequate answers / Thorough answers
a. Education / Primary education
b. Mining / Gold mining
c. Manufacturing / Manufacturing tin cans
d. Construction / Building houses
e. Farming / Farming with cattle
f. Trade / Retail trade

Ever given birth to a live child (ZA2007A_0461)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether the person has ever given birth to a live child.

Ever given birth to a live child (ZA2007A_0461)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-40 Has (the person) ever given birth to a live child even if the child died soon after birth?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
If 2 "No" Go to P-48.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-40): Has (the person) ever given birth to a live child, even if the child died soon after birth?
Include all her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are no longer alive.

Total children ever born (ZA2007A_0462)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the total number of children ever born.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-41 Total children ever born

a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?

__ __
b. How many are boys?

__ __
c. How many are girls?

__ __
Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.

Total children ever born (ZA2007A_0462)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Interviewer instructions

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-41): Total children ever born
a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

Confirm that total of b. and c. equals a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

Male children ever born (ZA2007A_0463)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the total number of male children ever born.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-41 Total children ever born

a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _
Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.

Interviewer instructions

Male children ever born (ZA2007A_0463)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-41): Total children ever born
a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

Confirm that total of b. and c. equals a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

Female children ever born (ZA2007A_0464)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the total number of female children ever born.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-41 Total children ever born

a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _
Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths.

Interviewer instructions

Female children ever born (ZA2007A_0464)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-41): Total children ever born
a. How many children has (the person) ever had that were born alive, even if they died soon after birth?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

Confirm that total of b. and c. equals a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

Total children surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0465)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the total number of children surviving and living in the household.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Total children surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0465)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-42): Total children surviving and living in this household:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-42.

Malechildren surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0466)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the number of male children of the person who are surviving and living in the household.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Malechildren surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0466)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-42): Total children surviving and living in this household:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-42.

Female children surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0467)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the number of female children surviving and living in the household.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-42 Total children surviving and living in this household

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _
Interviewer instructions

Female children surviving and living in the household (ZA2007A_0467)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-42): Total children surviving and living in this household:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living with her in this household, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-42.

Total children surviving and living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0468)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description	

This variable indicates the total children surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe	

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question	

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Total children surviving and living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0468)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-43): Total children surviving and living elsewhere:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Male children surviving living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0469)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description
This variable indicates the number of male children of the person who are surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe
Females age 12 to 50

Literal question
Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Male children surviving living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0469)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-43): Total children surviving and living elsewhere:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Female children surviving living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0470)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the number of female children surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-43 Total children surviving and living elsewhere

a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?

_ _
b. How many are boys?

_ _
c. How many are girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Female children surviving living elsewhere (ZA2007A_0470)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-43): Total children surviving and living elsewhere:
a. How many of (the person's) children are still alive and living elsewhere, including grown-ups?
b. How many are boys?
c. How many are girls?

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Total children dead (ZA2007A_0471)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the total number of the person's children who are dead.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-44 Total children no longer alive

a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?

_ _
b. How many were boys?

_ _
c. How many were girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Total children dead (ZA2007A_0471)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-44) Total children no longer alive:
a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

As this is a sensitive question, care should be taken when asking it.

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 plus P-44 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Male children dead (ZA2007A_0472)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

This variable indicates the number of the person's male children who are dead.

Universe

Females age 12 to 50

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-44 Total children no longer alive

a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?

_ _
b. How many were boys?

_ _
c. How many were girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Male children dead (ZA2007A_0472)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-44) Total children no longer alive:
a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

As this is a sensitive question, care should be taken when asking it.

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 plus P-44 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Female children dead (ZA2007A_0473)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description
This variable indicates the number of the person's female children who are dead.
Universe
Females age 12 to 50
Literal question
Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-44 Total children no longer alive

a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?

_ _
b. How many were boys?

_ _
c. How many were girls?

_ _

Interviewer instructions

Female children dead (ZA2007A_0473)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-44) Total children no longer alive:
a. How many of (the person's) children are no longer alive?
b. How many were boys?
c. How many were girls?

As this is a sensitive question, care should be taken when asking it.

Confirm that the total of b. and c. matches a. If there are any discrepancies, probe.

The total for P-42 plus P-43 plus P-44 cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-41.

Day of birth of last child (ZA2007A_0474)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-31	

Description
This variable indicates the day of birth of the person's last child.

Universe
Females age 12 to 49 who have given birth to a child

Literal question
Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-45 Last child born
If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?

Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child.
Do not count still births (children born dead.)
Day _ _
Month _ _
Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

Day of birth of last child (ZA2007A_0474)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-45) Last child born: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?
Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the person was born on 5 January 1990, write 05 for the day, 01 for month and 1990 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only the last child.

Month of birth of last child (ZA2007A_0475)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-12	

Description
This variable indicates the month of birth of the person's last child.

Universe
Females age 12 to 49 who have given birth to a child

Literal question
Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-45 Last child born
If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?

Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child. Do not count still births (children born dead.)
Day _ _
Month _ _
Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-45) Last child born: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?
Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the person was born on 5 January 1990, write 05 for the day, 01 for month and 1990 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only the last child.

Year of birth of last child (ZA2007A_0476)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 4	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2007	

Description

This variable indicates the year of birth of the person's last child.

Universe

Females age 12 to 49 who have given birth to a child

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-45 Last child born
If the person has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?

Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the child was born on 5 January 1970, write 05 for the day, 01 for the month and 1970 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only last child. Do not count still births (children born dead.)
Day _ _
Month _ _
Year _ _ _ _

Interviewer instructions

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-45) Last child born: When was (the person's) last child born, even if the child died soon after birth?
Write the day (2 digits), month (2 digits) and year (4 digits) of the last live birth. For example, if the person was born on 5 January 1990, write 05 for the day, 01 for month and 1990 for the year. If multiple births, indicate only the last child.

Sex of last child born (ZA2007A_0477)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

This variable indicates the sex of the last child born.

Universe

Females age 12 to 49 who have given birth to a child

Literal question

Sex of last child born (ZA2007A_0477)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-46
Is (the person)'s last born child male or female?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
If multiple births, indicate only last child.
[] 1 Male
[] 2 Female

Interviewer instructions

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-46) Is (the person's) last born child male or female?
Ask the person if the last-born child was a boy or a girl. Mark with an X 1 for boy or 2 for girl. If multiple births, indicate only the last child.

Last child born still alive (ZA2007A_0478)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the last child born is still alive.

Universe

Females age 12 to 49 who have given birth to a child

Literal question

Section F: Fertility - ask of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap [Questions P-40 to P-47.]

P-47 Last born child alive
Is (the person)'s last born child still alive?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
If multiple births, indicate only last child.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No

Interviewer instructions

Last child born still alive (ZA2007A_0478)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.7. Section F: Fertility

This section is to be asked only of women aged 12 to 50 years (born between and including 1957 and 1995) listed on the flap.

(P-47) Is (the person's) last born child still alive?
Ask the person if the last child is still alive or dead. Mark the "Yes" box with an X if the child is still alive at the time of the interview. If multiple births, indicate only the last child.

Mother still alive (ZA2007A_0479)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether or not the person's biological mother was still alive.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap

P-48 Mother alive
Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive?

Mark appropriate box with an X. If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-50.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

(P-48) Mother alive: Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive?
Ask each person in the household whether his/her biological mother (not a stepmother or mother by adoption) is still alive.

Mother's person number (ZA2007A_0480)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number of the person's mother.

Universe

Mother's person number (ZA2007A_0480)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Persons not residing in institutions whose mothers are still living

Literal question

Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap

P-49 Mother's person number
Who in this household is (the person's) biological mother?
(column no. of biological mother).

[Question P-49 was asked of persons whose own biological mother is still alive, per question P-48.]
If the mother does not live in this household, write 98.
‒ ‒

Interviewer instructions

(P-49) Mother person number: Who in this household is (the person's) biological mother?
Write the person number of mother, if she lives in the same household.
If the mother does not live in the same household, write 99 in the box provided.

Father still alive (ZA2007A_0481)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether the person's father was still alive.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap

P-50 Father alive
Is (the person)'s own biological father still alive?

Mark appropriate box with an X.
If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know", go to P-52.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

(P-50) Father alive: Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?
Ask whether the person's biological father (not a stepfather or father by adoption) is still alive.

Father's person number (ZA2007A_0482)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Father's person number (ZA2007A_0482)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person number of the person's father.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions whose fathers are still living

Literal question

Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap

P-51 Father's person number
Who in this household is (the person)'s biological father?
(column no. of biological father).

[Question P-51 was asked of persons whose own biological father is still alive, per question P-50.]
If the father does not live in this household, write 98.

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-51) Father person number: Who in this household is (the person's) biological father?
Write the person number of father, if he lives in the same household.
If the father does not live in the same household, write 99 in the box provided.

Income (monthly/annual) (ZA2007A_0483)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's income category.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Income (monthly/annual) (ZA2007A_0483)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Section G: Parental survival and income - ask everyone listed on the flap

P-52 Income category
What is the income category that best describes the gross monthly or annual income of (the person) before deductions and including all sources of income?

Read out:
Monthly / Annual
[] 01 No income / No income
[] 02 R 1 - R 400 / R 1 - R 4 800
[] 03 R 401 - R 800 / R 4 801 - R 9 600
[] 04 R 801 - R 1 600 / R 9 601 - R 19 200
[] 05 R 1 601 - R 3 200 / R 19 201 - R 38 400
[] 06 R 3 201 - R 6 400 / R 38 401 - R 76 800
[] 07 R 6 401 - R 12 800 / R 76 801 - R 153 600
[] 08 R 12 801 - R 25 600 / R 153 601 - R 307 200
[] 09 R 25 601 - R 51 200 / R 307 201 - R 614 400
[] 10 R 51 201 - R 102 400 / R 614 401 - R 1 228 800
[] 11 R 102 401- R 204 800 / R 1 228 801- R 2 457 600
[] 12 R 204 801 or more / R 2 457 601 or more
[] 13 Response not given
Write code in the box.

_ _

Interviewer instructions

(P-52) Income category: What is the income category that best describes the gross monthly or annual income of (the person) before deductions and including all sources of income?
Read the monthly or annual categories out to the person or show him/her the questionnaire and ask him/her to indicate a category. Fill in the correct code either under Monthly or under Annual in the corresponding block.

Both tables are provided so that people can answer in terms of monthly or annual income.

The resulting code will always be the same, e.g. an annual income of R36 000 will have a code of 05 as will a monthly income of R3000. Similarly a monthly income of R250 will have a code of 02 as will an annual income of R3000.

[p.59]

For those who receive a daily, weekly or fortnightly wage, multiply by 30, 4 or 2 respectively to get the monthly income.

If the respondent is unwilling to give income information, remind him/her that the information is strictly confidential and that there is no way that a response could be traced back to a specific individual. If the respondent still refuses, write code 13.

Flag for PERNUMO (ZA2007A_0484)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person number.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for PERNUMO (ZA2007A_0484)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for PERNUMO

Flag for BIRDAY (ZA2007A_0485)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's day of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BIRDAY

Flag for BIRMON (ZA2007A_0486)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's month of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BIRMON

Flag for BIRYR (ZA2007A_0487)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's year of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BIRYR

Flag for AGE (ZA2007A_0488)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's age.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for AGE

Flag for SEX (ZA2007A_0489)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's sex.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for SEX

Flag for STAY4NIT (ZA2007A_0490)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for whether the person usually stays four nights a week at the residence of enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for STAY4NIT

Flag for LASTNIT (ZA2007A_0491)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for LASTNIT (ZA2007A_0491)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for whether the person stayed at the enumeration household the previous night.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for LASTNIT

Flag for RELATE (ZA2007A_0492)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's relationship to the head of household.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RELATE

Flag for MARST (ZA2007A_0493)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's marital status.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for MARST

Flag for SPLOCO (ZA2007A_0494)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for SPLOCO (ZA2007A_0494)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person number of the spouse of the enumerated person.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for SPLOCO

Flag for RACE (ZA2007A_0495)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's race.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RACE

Flag for BPLPR (ZA2007A_0496)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's province of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BPLPR

Flag for BPLPL (ZA2007A_0497)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for BPLPL (ZA2007A_0497)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for person's main place of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BPLPL

Flag for BPLSUB (ZA2007A_0498)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's sub-place of birth.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for BPLSUB

Flag for RESPL (ZA2007A_0499)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's main place of usual residence.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RESPL

Flag for RESSUB (ZA2007A_0500)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for RESSUB (ZA2007A_0500)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's sub-place of usual residence.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RESSUB

Flag for HERE5YR (ZA2007A_0501)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person lived in the dwelling five years prior to the date of enumeration (October 2001).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for HERE5YR

Flag for HEREMON (ZA2007A_0502)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the month in which the person moved to the dwelling.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for HEREMON

Flag for HEREYR (ZA2007A_0503)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for HEREYR (ZA2007A_0503)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the year in which the person moved to the dwelling.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for HEREYR

Flag for RESPRPR (ZA2007A_0504)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the province of previous residence.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RESPRPR

Flag for RESPRPL (ZA2007A_0505)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's main place of previous residence.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RESPRPL

Flag for RESPRSUB (ZA2007A_0506)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for RESPRSUB (ZA2007A_0506)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's sub-place of previous residence.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for RESPRSUB

Flag for DISAB (ZA2007A_0507)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISAB

Flag for DISABS (ZA2007A_0508)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the sight-related disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABS

Flag for DISABH (ZA2007A_0509)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for DISABH (ZA2007A_0509)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for hearing-related disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABH

Flag for DISABC (ZA2007A_0510)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for communication disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABC

Flag for DISABP (ZA2007A_0511)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for physical disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABP

Flag for DISABI (ZA2007A_0512)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for DISABI (ZA2007A_0512)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for intellectual disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABI

Flag for DISABE (ZA2007A_0513)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for emotional disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABE

Flag for DISABLA (ZA2007A_0514)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for a disability that prevents the person from life activities.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for DISABLA

Flag for GRANT (ZA2007A_0515)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for GRANT (ZA2007A_0515)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person receives any government/welfare grants.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANT

Flag for GRANTOA (ZA2007A_0516)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for receipt of a social grant in the form of old age pension.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTOA

Flag for GRANTD (ZA2007A_0517)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for receipt of a social grant for disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTD

Flag for GRANTCS (ZA2007A_0518)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for GRANTCS (ZA2007A_0518)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for receipt of social grant for child support.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTCS

Flag for GRANTDC (ZA2007A_0519)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for receipt of social grant for dependent child care.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTDC

Flag for GRANTFC (ZA2007A_0520)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for receipt of a social grant for foster care.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTFC

Flag for GRANTIA (ZA2007A_0521)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for GRANTIA (ZA2007A_0521)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the receipt of a social grant in aid.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTIA

Flag for GRANTSR (ZA2007A_0522)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the receipt of a social relief grant.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for GRANTSR

Flag for SCHOOL (ZA2007A_0523)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for school attendance.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for SCHOOL

Flag for SCHLLEV (ZA2007A_0524)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for SCHLLEV (ZA2007A_0524)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for educational institution.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for SCHLLEV

Flag for SCHLPUB (ZA2007A_0525)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for private/public school.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for SCHLPUB

Flag for EDATTAN (ZA2007A_0526)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the highest level of education.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for EDATTAN

Flag for WKBUS (ZA2007A_0527)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for WKBUS (ZA2007A_0527)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person ran or conducted any kind of business, big or small, in the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKBUS

Flag for WKPAY (ZA2007A_0528)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person worked for a wage, salary, commission or any payment in kind during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKPAY

Flag for WKDOM (ZA2007A_0529)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person worked as domestic worker for a wage, salary, or any payment in kind during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKDOM

Flag for WKHHBUS (ZA2007A_0530)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person helped unpaid in a household business of any kind during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKHHBUS

Flag for WKPLOT (ZA2007A_0531)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person worked on the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal or helped in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKPLOT

Flag for WKREPAIR (ZA2007A_0532)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person did any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKREPAIR

Flag for WKHUNT (ZA2007A_0533)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person caught any fish, prawns, shells, wild animals or other food for sale or for the household during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKHUNT

Flag for WKNOTNOW (ZA2007A_0534)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person had a job, business, or other economic or farming activity to return to if they had not worked during the 7 days prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKNOTNOW

Flag for WKWHYNOT (ZA2007A_0535)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the reason for not working.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKWHYNOT

Flag for WKAVAIL (ZA2007A_0536)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for availability for work.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKAVAIL

Flag for WKLOOK (ZA2007A_0537)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person took action to look for any kind of work during the 4 weeks prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKLOOK

Flag for WKBUSNEW (ZA2007A_0538)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person taken any action to start any kind of business during the 4 weeks prior to enumeration.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKBUSNEW

Flag for CLASSWK (ZA2007A_0539)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for work status.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CLASSWK

Flag for WKFORMAL (ZA2007A_0540)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's sector of employment.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKFORMAL

Flag for OCC (ZA2007A_0541)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for occupation.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for OCC

Flag for WKNAME (ZA2007A_0542)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for WKNAME (ZA2007A_0542)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for the name of the person's place of work/company.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for WKNAME

Flag for IND (ZA2007A_0543)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for industry.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for IND

Flag for ANYKIDS (ZA2007A_0544)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for whether the person ever given birth to a live child.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for ANYKIDS

Flag for CHBORN (ZA2007A_0545)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for CHBORN (ZA2007A_0545)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for total children ever born.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHBORN

Flag for CHBORNM (ZA2007A_0546)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for male children ever born.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHBORNM

Flag for CHBORNF (ZA2007A_0547)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for female children ever born.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHBORNF

Flag for CHSURVH (ZA2007A_0548)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for CHSURVH (ZA2007A_0548)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for total children surviving living in the household.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVH

Flag for CHSURVHM (ZA2007A_0549)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for male children surviving living in the household.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVHM

Flag for CHSURVHF (ZA2007A_0550)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for female children surviving and living in the household.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVHF

Flag for CHSURVE (ZA2007A_0551)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for CHSURVE (ZA2007A_0551)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for total children surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVE

Flag for CHSURVEM (ZA2007A_0552)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for male children surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVEM

Flag for CHSURVEF (ZA2007A_0553)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for female children surviving and living elsewhere.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHSURVEF

Flag for CHDEAD (ZA2007A_0554)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for CHDEAD (ZA2007A_0554)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for total children dead.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHDEAD

Flag for CHDEADM (ZA2007A_0555)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for male children dead.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHDEADM

Flag for CHDEADF (ZA2007A_0556)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for female children dead.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for CHDEADF

Flag for LSTCHDAY (ZA2007A_0557)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for LSTCHDAY (ZA2007A_0557)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for day of birth for the last child born.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for LSTCHDAY

Flag for LSTCHSEX (ZA2007A_0560)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the sex of the last child born.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for LSTCHSEX

Flag for LSTCHLIV (ZA2007A_0561)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the last child born is still alive.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for LSTCHLIV

Flag for MOMLIV (ZA2007A_0562)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for MOMLIV (ZA2007A_0562)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for whether the person's mother is living.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for MOMLIV

Flag for MOMLOCO (ZA2007A_0563)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person number of the mother (of the enumerated

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for MOMLOCO

Flag for POPLIV (ZA2007A_0564)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates an imputation flag for whether the person's father is living.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for POPLIV

Flag for POPLOCO (ZA2007A_0565)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Flag for POPLOCO (ZA2007A_0565)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person number of the father (of the enumerated person).

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for POPLOCO

Flag for INCOMEGR (ZA2007A_0566)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates whether there is an imputation flag for the person's income category.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

Flag for INCOMEGR

Weight: design weights (ZA2007A_0567)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous

Format: numeric

Width: 9

Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the design weights.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Weight: design weights

Employment status (official definition) (ZA2007A_0568)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete

Format: numeric

Width: 1

Decimals: 0

Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0

Invalid: 0

Employment status (official definition) (ZA2007A_0568)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

This variable indicates the person's employment status according to the official definition.

Employed persons are those who reported having engaged in any of the work activities listed on the census (questions P30a-g) for at least one hour during the 7 days prior to the census interview or who reported being temporarily out of work but having a job to which they would return. The variable listing reason for not working (WKWHYNOT) distinguishes, in part, among unemployed people and those who were not economically active. People who reported their status as student, housewife/homemaker, retired, ill/invalid/disabled, or too young/too old to work in their reason for not working (categories 2 through 6 of WKWHYNOT) are "not economically active." People who had found a job which would start at a definite date in the future (category 1 of WKWHYNOT) are "unemployed." People who listed other reasons for not working (categories 7 through 13 of WKWHYNOT) were divided into unemployed or not economically active based on a combination of additional criteria from WKAVAIL, WKLOOK and WKBUSNEW. If this group was available for work within 1-2 weeks and also either looking for work or taking action to start a business, they considered unemployed. Otherwise, they were classified as not economically active. (In contrast, the variable for the expanded definition of employment status, EMPSTATEXP, relies only on the WKAVAIL criteria of being available for work within two weeks to classify as unemployed.)

People who did not report a reason for not working are in the Unknown category (=8).

Universe

Persons age 15 to 65 who do not live in institutions

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-31 Temporary absence from work
Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?

[Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence.
If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

P-32 Reasons for not working
Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?

[Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future
[] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work
[] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work
[] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work
[] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped)
[] 06 Too young or too old to work
[] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer
[] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs
[] 09 Cannot find work
[] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory)
[] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract
[] 12 Retrenched
[] 13 Other reason
Write code in the box.

– –

P-33 Availability for work
If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?

[Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 1 Within a week
[] 2 Within two weeks
[] 3 Within four weeks
[] 4 More than four weeks from now
[] 5 Not interested
[] 6 Not able (health or disability)
[] 7 Do not know
Write code in the box.

–

P-34 Active steps seeking work
During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work?

[Question P-34 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

P-35 Active steps seeking work
During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business?

[Question P-35 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
If P-34 and P-35 completed Go to P-40
Mark appropriate box with an X.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

Interviewer instructions

Employment status (official definition) (ZA2007A_0568)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30a) In the last 7 days, did (the person) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for himself / herself or with one or more partners even for only one hour?
Stress the reference period of the last 7 days. Note that it includes any activity up to the day before the interview.

Also note the phrase, "even for only one hour". It must be clear that the time frame is per category and not in conjunction with other activities. Thus, for each category, a person should be engaged for at least one hour in the last seven days to answer "Yes" to that category. You must go through each part of the question slowly and thoroughly, reading out examples and ensuring the respondent understands each part before answering "Yes"," No" or "Do not know".

[p.52]

Note: An answer is required and must be recorded for each question "Yes", "No" or "Do not know" should be recorded for each activity.

(P-30b): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work for a wage, salary, commission or payment in kind (excluding domestic work) even for only one hour?
This includes all types of paid employment, even for one hour, in the last seven days, paid either in cash or in kind, for example, with food, clothing or accommodation. Probe particularly for: casual work, piece jobs and part-time work.

Note: Exclude domestic work - this should be recorded only under P-30c.

(P-30c): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work as a domestic worker for a wage, salary or payment in kind even for only an hour?
It is important to note that this question refers to domestic work that a person does as an employee of a particular household and is receiving some sort of remuneration for doing it. Household gardeners also come under this category. They are different from gardeners employed by institutions or organisations.

It excludes the normal housework that is done by members of the household for no pay at all.

(P-30d): In the last 7 days, did (the person) help unpaid in a household business of any kind even for only one hour?
This is a common activity, especially for young people in some areas, and must be probed for. It is often missed in surveys. Make it very clear that a household business does not mean helping out with the housework at home.

(P-30e): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work on his/her own on the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or help in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household even for only one hour?
In areas where agriculture or grazing is possible, this activity is common in certain seasons and must be probed for.

These activities are also commonly missed in surveys. It is expected that many young persons in the old homeland areas will do these activities, particularly during the school holidays.

(P-30f): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business even for only one hour?
This question differs from P-30e in that it only refers to construction and major repair work while P-30e refers to farming activities.

(P-30g): In the last 7 days, did (the person) catch any fish, prawns, shellfish, wild animals, either as food for sale or for household use, even for only one hour?
Mark a "Yes", "No" or "Don't know" for each person.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-31): Temporary absence from work: Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?
This question is only to be asked of those persons who have not been engaged in any activities in the last 7 days, i.e. No to all of P-30a to P-30g.

The most common group is people on leave, e.g. annual leave, sick leave, maternity leave or any other leave. They did not work in the last 7 days, but they have a job to go back to and should be recorded as active in their usual job.

Note that if a person is not working because of the off-season in agriculture or other seasonal industries, he/she is not to be regarded as temporarily absent. He/she is regarded as unemployed or not economically active until the next season begins.

If the answer is "No", continue with P-32.

If the answer is "Yes", Go to P-36.

(P-32) Reasons for not working: Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?
This question must only be answered for the person who answered "No" to all the questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.

Do not read out the categories; let the person give the reason without being influenced by the categories. Mark only one reason.

If the person has found a job and has a definite starting date (Code 01), do not ask P-33 to P-39 - Go to P-40.

(P-33) Availability for work: If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?
This question should only be asked of persons who answered "No" in P-31.

(P-34) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work?
The person, who went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for work should answer "Yes".

(P-35) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business?
The person who went looking for land or a building or equipment to start their own business or farm should answer, "Yes".

Employment status (expanded definition) (ZA2007A_0569)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the person's employment status according to an expanded definition of employment.

The number of employed persons is the same in both the official and expanded definitions of employment status and includes people who reported having engaged in any of the work activities listed on the census (questions P30a-g) for at least one hour during the 7 days prior to the census interview or who reported being temporarily out of work from a job to which they would return. Both the official and expanded definitions of employment status classify people who reported their status as student, housewife/homemaker, retired, ill/invalid/disabled, or too young/too old to work in reason for not working (categories 2 through 6 of WKWHYNOT) as "not economically active," and those who had found a new job beginning at a definite date in the future (category 1 of WKWHYNOT) as "unemployed." The difference between the official and expanded classification systems applies to people who reported other reasons for not working (categories 7 through 13 of WKWHYNOT). Under the expanded definition, people with other reasons for not working, who reported being available for work (WKAVAIL) within two weeks, are unemployed. (In contrast, the official definition of employment status imposes additional limitations based upon whether a person was looking for work or starting a business to qualify as unemployed).

People who did not report a reason for not working are in the Unknown category (=8).

Universe

Persons age 15 to 65 who do not live in institutions

Literal question

Section E: Employment and economic activities - ask of all persons 15 years and older listed on the flap
[Questions P-30 to P-39 were asked of persons age 15 and older.]

P-30 Employment status

P-31 Temporary absence from work
Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?

[Question P-31 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
For agricultural activities, the off season in agriculture is not a temporary absence.
If 1 "Yes" Go to P-36.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

P-32 Reasons for not working
Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?

[Question P-32 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 01 Has found a job, but is only starting at a definite date in the future
[] 02 Scholar/student and prefers not to work
[] 03 Housewife/homemaker and prefers not to work
[] 04 Retired and prefers not to seek formal work
[] 05 Invalid, ill, disabled or unable to work (handicapped)
[] 06 Too young or too old to work
[] 07 Seasonal worker, e.g. fruit picker, wool-shearer
[] 08 Lack of skills or qualifications for available jobs
[] 09 Cannot find work
[] 10 Cannot find suitable work (salary, location of work or conditions not satisfactory)
[] 11 Contract worker, e.g. mine worker resting according to contract
[] 12 Retrenched
[] 13 Other reason
Write code in the box.
_ _

P-33 Availability for work
If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?

[Question P-33 was asked of persons who were not working in the last seven days, per questions P-30a to P-30g.]
[] 1 Within a week
[] 2 Within two weeks
[] 3 Within four weeks
[] 4 More than four weeks from now
[] 5 Not interested
[] 6 Not able (health or disability)
[] 7 Do not know
Write code in the box.
_

Interviewer instructions

Employment status (expanded definition) (ZA2007A_0569)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

5.6. Section E: Employment and Economic Activities

This section is to be asked for every person fifteen (15) years and older listed on the flap.

(P-30a) In the last 7 days, did (the person) run or do any kind of business, big or small, for himself / herself or with one or more partners even for only one hour?
Stress the reference period of the last 7 days. Note that it includes any activity up to the day before the interview.

Also note the phrase, "even for only one hour". It must be clear that the time frame is per category and not in conjunction with other activities. Thus, for each category, a person should be engaged for at least one hour in the last seven days to answer "Yes" to that category. You must go through each part of the question slowly and thoroughly, reading out examples and ensuring the respondent understands each part before answering "Yes"," No" or "Do not know".

[p.52]

Note: An answer is required and must be recorded for each question "Yes", "No" or "Do not know" should be recorded for each activity.

(P-30b): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work for a wage, salary, commission or payment in kind (excluding domestic work) even for only one hour?
This includes all types of paid employment, even for one hour, in the last seven days, paid either in cash or in kind, for example, with food, clothing or accommodation. Probe particularly for: casual work, piece jobs and part-time work.

Note: Exclude domestic work - this should be recorded only under P-30c.

(P-30c): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work as a domestic worker for a wage, salary or payment in kind even for only an hour?
It is important to note that this question refers to domestic work that a person does as an employee of a particular household and is receiving some sort of remuneration for doing it. Household gardeners also come under this category. They are different from gardeners employed by institutions or organisations.

It excludes the normal housework that is done by members of the household for no pay at all.

(P-30d): In the last 7 days, did (the person) help unpaid in a household business of any kind even for only one hour?
This is a common activity, especially for young people in some areas, and must be probed for. It is often missed in surveys. Make it very clear that a household business does not mean helping out with the housework at home.

(P-30e): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any work on his/her own on the household's plot, farm, food garden, cattle post or kraal, or help in growing farm produce or in looking after animals for the household even for only one hour?
In areas where agriculture or grazing is possible, this activity is common in certain seasons and must be probed for.

These activities are also commonly missed in surveys. It is expected that many young persons in the old homeland areas will do these activities, particularly during the school holidays.

(P-30f): In the last 7 days, did (the person) do any construction or major repair work on his/her own home, plot, cattle post or business even for only one hour?
This question differs from P-30e in that it only refers to construction and major repair work while P-30e refers to farming activities.

(P-30g): In the last 7 days, did (the person) catch any fish, prawns, shellfish, wild animals, either as food for sale or for household use, even for only one hour?
Mark a "Yes", "No" or "Don't know" for each person.

If "yes" for a person to any of the questions from p-30a to p-30g, go to p-36 for that person.

[p.53]

Even if the person did only one of the mentioned activities even for at least one hour during the past 7days the skip to Question P-36 is still valid.

If "no" to all questions from p-30a to p-30g, continue with p-31 to p-35 for that person.

(P-31): Temporary absence from work: Even though (the person) did not do any of these activities in the last seven days, does he/she have a job, business, or other economic or farming activity that he/she will definitely return to?
This question is only to be asked of those persons who have not been engaged in any activities in the last 7 days, i.e. No to all of P-30a to P-30g.

The most common group is people on leave, e.g. annual leave, sick leave, maternity leave or any other leave. They did not work in the last 7 days, but they have a job to go back to and should be recorded as active in their usual job.

Note that if a person is not working because of the off-season in agriculture or other seasonal industries, he/she is not to be regarded as temporarily absent. He/she is regarded as unemployed or not economically active until the next season begins.

If the answer is "No", continue with P-32.

If the answer is "Yes", Go to P-36.

(P-32) Reasons for not working: Why did (the person) not work during the past seven days?
This question must only be answered for the person who answered "No" to all the questions P-30a to P-30g and P-31.

Do not read out the categories; let the person give the reason without being influenced by the categories. Mark only one reason.

If the person has found a job and has a definite starting date (Code 01), do not ask P-33 to P-39 - Go to P-40.

(P-33) Availability for work: If a suitable job is offered, how soon can (the person) start work?
This question should only be asked of persons who answered "No" in P-31.

(P-34) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to look for any kind of work?
The person, who went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for work should answer "Yes".

(P-35) During the past four weeks, has (the person) taken any action to start any kind of business?
The person who went looking for land or a building or equipment to start their own business or farm should answer, "Yes".

Derived disability (ZA2007A_0570)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the derived disability.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-21 Disability
Does (the person) have any kind of disability?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-24.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

P-22 Disability type
What type(s) of disability does (the person) have?

[Question P-22 was asked of persons who had some kind of disability, per question P-21.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
Multiple disabilities are indicated by marking more than one selection.
Read out:
[] 1 Sight (blind/severe visual limitation
[] 2 Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 Physical (needs wheelchair, crutches, etc.)
[] 5 Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 Emotional (behavioural, psychological)

Interviewer instructions

(P-21) Disability: Does (the person) have any kinds of disability?
Ask whether the person has a disability.
Explain to the respondent that the definition of a disability includes a serious sight, hearing, physical, communication, intellectual, emotional or mental disability that has lasted for 6 months or more. Mark the appropriate box.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know" code 3, Go to P-24.

(P-22) Disability type: What type/s of disability does (the person) have?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-21. Read out the options and then mark the appropriate option. If the respondent identifies more than one disability, mark all mentioned with an X.

Derived social grant (ZA2007A_0571)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Derived social grant (ZA2007A_0571)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the derived social grant.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-24 Social grant
Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?

Mark appropriate box with an X
If 2 "No" or 3 "Do not know" Go to P-26.
[] 1 Yes
[] 2 No
[] 3 Do not know

P-25 Type of social grant
What type(s) of social /government grant does (the person) receive?

[Question P-25 was asked of persons who received social/government grant, per question P-24.]
Mark any that apply with an X.
[] 1 Old age pension
[] 2 Disability grant
[] 3 Child support grant (linked to a child)
[] 4 Care dependency grant
[] 5 Foster care grant
[] 6 Grant in aid
[] 7 Social relief

Interviewer instructions

Derived social grant (ZA2007A_0571)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Social grant
Read out: I'm now going to ask about social grants that each person may be receiving. By social grants, we mean financial assistance given by the government to people who have no other means of support or income.

(P-24) Social grant: Does (the person) receive any social / government grant?
This question must be answered for all persons listed on the flap.
A social grant is financial assistance received from the government.

If the answer is "No" code 2 or "Do not know'" code 3, Go to P-26.

(P-25) Type of social grant: What type/s of social/ government grant does (the person) receive?
Ask only if "Yes, code 1" to P-24. If the person receives any social / government grant, record which he/she receives. There may be more than one answer.

Read out list from questionnaire and mark the appropriate boxes with an X.

[p.50]

Old age grant - money received from government as a grant to men (65 years or older) and women (60 years or older) who have no other means of financial support.
Disability grant - grant received from government by adults (men 18-64 years old and women 18-60 years old), who are classified as disabled and who have no other means of financial support. To qualify for this grant, a person must submit a medical or assessment report confirming disability. Note people with diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, cancer, etc., who have been proven through a medical assessment as unable to work for a certain period, qualify for a disability grant.
Child support grant - this is a Government grant given to children (0-11 years old) in underprivileged families. NB: This grant linked to a child and should be indicated on the column meant for the child.
Care dependency grant - money received by disabled children (1 - 18 years old).
Foster care grant - money given to adults who are looking after children from orphanages for a certain period of time, usually legally stipulated. These are not adopted children, but fostered ones.
Grant in aid - this is an additional grant awarded to persons who are in receipt of other grants e.g. old age grant, disability, war veterans, etc., and who are unable to care for themselves and have someone looking after them on a full-time basis.
Social relief - a temporary provision of financial assistance intended for persons in such dire material need that they are unable to meet their or their family's most basic needs, e.g., people who have lost their possessions through natural disasters like floods or fires etc.

Province of usual residence (2001 classification) (ZA2007A_0572)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-99	

Description

This variable indicates the province of the person's usual residence in 2001.

Universe

Persons not residing in institutions

Literal question

P-14 Main place of usual residence
In which city, town, township, or tribal area does (the person) usually live?

Write the name of the place in capital letters.

———

Interviewer instructions

Province of usual residence (2001 classification) (ZA2007A_0572)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

(P-14) Main-place of residence: In which city, town, township or tribal area does (the person) usually live?
Please note that this question refers to the main place i.e. city, town, tribal area, administrative area etc. If a person usually lives in Gauteng province, Johannesburg city in Diepkloof Ext, write Johannesburg.

Weight: average adjusted (ZA2007A_0573)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Continuous	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 9	
Decimals: 6	

Description
This variable indicates the average adjusted weights.

Universe
All persons

Literal question
Weight: average adjusted

Weight: survey less unoccupied (ZA2007A_0575)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Continuous	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 9	
Decimals: 6	

Description
This variable indicates the Community Survey less unoccupied weights.

Universe
All persons

Literal question
Weight: survey less unoccupied

Weight: survey adjusted all non-response (ZA2007A_0576)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Continuous	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 9	
Decimals: 6	

Description
This variable indicates the Community Survey adjusted all non-response weights.

Universe
All persons

Literal question
Weight: survey adjusted all non-response

Weight: survey final provincial weights (ZA2007A_0577)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the Community Survey final provincial weights.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Weight: survey final provincial weights

Type of dwelling, CS scope (ZA2007A_0578)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 1-5

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the type of dwelling/Community Survey scope status.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Type of dwelling, CS scope

Weight: final municipal de-facto weights (ZA2007A_0579)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the Community Survey final municipal de-facto weights.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Weight: final municipal de-facto weights

Weight: final municipal de-jure weights (ZA2007A_0580)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Weight: final municipal de-jure weights (ZA2007A_0580)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 6

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

This variable indicates the Community Survey final municipal de-jure weights.

Universe

All persons

Literal question

Weight: final municipal de-jure weights

Person weight (PERWT)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 8
Decimals: 2

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

PERWT indicates the number of persons in the actual population represented by the person in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), PERWT must be used to yield accurate statistics for the population.

NOTE: PERWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

Number of own male children living elsewhere (AWAYMALE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 2
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-99

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

AWAYMALE indicates the number of surviving biological male children not living in the household with their mother (the respondent).

Disability status (DISABLED)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: numeric
Width: 1
Decimals: 0
Range: 0-9

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

Disability status (DISABLED)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

DISABLED indicates whether the person reported a disability of any kind.

Year of last birth (LASTBYR)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 4	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1900-9999	

Description

LASTBYR indicates the year of birth of the last child borne by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

Years residing in current dwelling (MIGYRS2)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

MIGYRS2 indicates the number of years that the respondent has lived in his/her current dwelling.

Sex of last birth (LASTBSEX)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

LASTBSEX indicates the sex of a woman's most recent birth.

Number of own male children in household (HOMEMALE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	

Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

Number of own male children in household (HOMEMALE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

HOMEMALE indicates the number of male children born living in the household with their mother (the respondent).

Years of schooling (YRSCHOOL)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

YRSCHOOL indicates the highest grade/level of schooling the person had completed, in years. Only formal schooling is counted. YRSCHOOL accounts for the number of years of study, regardless of the track or kind of study. Information on degree and/or technical track is available in EDATTAIN. Years of schooling for Israel, categorized into intervals, are given in YRSCHOOL2.

Users should pay close attention to the top-codes in each sample, as discussed in the comparability section.

Migration status, previous residence (MIGRATEP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

MIGRATEP indicates whether the person's most recent move (if any) was between minor administrative units, major units, or countries.

Educational attainment, international recode [general version] (EDATTAIN)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

Educational attainment, international recode [general version] (EDATTAIN)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version] (EDATTAIND)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 3	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-999	

Description

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

Month of last birth (LASTBMO)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 1-99	

Description

LASTBMO indicates the month of birth of the last child borne by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

Number of own children in household (HOMECHILD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

HOMECHILD indicates the number of surviving biological children living in the household with their mother (the respondent) at the time of the census.

Number of own children living elsewhere (AWAYCHILD)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

AWAYCHILD indicates the number of surviving biological children not living in the household with their mother (the respondent) at the time of the census.

Same house 5 years ago (MIGHOUSE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

MIGHOUSE indicates whether the person lived in the same house 5 years ago.

Same place 5 years ago, South Africa (MIGPLCZA)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	**Valid cases:** 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-2	

Description

MIGPLCZA indicates whether the person lived in the same location five years prior to the census.

Nativity status (NATIVITY)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 1	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-9	

Description

NATIVITY indicates whether the person was native- or foreign-born.

Number of female children dead (CHDEADFEM)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

CHDEADFEM indicates the number of female children ever born to a woman who are no longer living. Stillbirths are not counted.

It is possible to calculate total child deaths for samples that have both the "Female children ever born" and "Female children surviving" variables. That is not done in CHDEADFEM, which includes only the samples that directly reported the information in the appropriate form.

Number of male children dead (CHDEADMALE)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Discrete	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 2	
Decimals: 0	
Range: 0-99	

Description

CHDEADMALE indicates the number of male children ever born to a woman who are no longer living. Stillbirths are not counted.

It is possible to calculate total child deaths for samples that have both the "Male children ever born" and "Male children surviving" variables. That is not done in CHDEADMALE, which includes only the samples that directly reported the information in the appropriate form.

Year [person version] (YEARP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview	
Type: Continuous	Valid cases: 0
Format: numeric	Invalid: 0
Width: 4	
Decimals: 0	

Year [person version] (YEARP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

IPUMS sample identifier [person version] (SAMPLEP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 9
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Household serial number [person version] (SERIAL)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 10
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Country [person version] (COUNTRYP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Continuous
Format: numeric
Width: 3
Decimals: 0

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Record type [person version] (RECTYPEP)
File: ZAF2007-P-H

Overview

Type: Discrete
Format: character
Width: 1

Valid cases: 0
Invalid: 0

Description

[This file is just a placeholder. See the household version of the variable.]

Related Materials

Questionnaires

Community Survey 2007, Household Questionnaire

Title	Community Survey 2007, Household Questionnaire
Author(s)	Statistics South Africa
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Filename	enum_form_za2007.pdf

Technical documents

Community Survey 2007: Enumerator's Manual

Title	Community Survey 2007: Enumerator's Manual
Author(s)	Statistics South Africa
Date	2006-01-01
Country	South Africa
Language	English
Filename	enum_instruct_za2007.pdf